

THE ROLE OF INDIAN POLICEMEN IN  
THE SOUTH AFRICAN POLICE FORCE

by

EDWARD EMMANUEL POODHUN

*Submitted in part fulfilment of  
the requirements for the degree  
of*

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

*in the Department of Criminology  
in the Faculty of Arts of the  
University of Durban-Westville*

Promotor : Professor R R Graser  
Head : Department of Criminology  
University of Durban-Westville

DURBAN : FEBRUARY 1983

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I wish to thank the following individuals and institutions for their valued assistance in making this research project possible.

I want to use this opportunity of expressing my deep thanks to my promotor Professor R R Graser for all the help and advice he has given to me to make this thesis possible. Without his invaluable assistance, this undertaking would have been a much more difficult task. But his constant and guiding hand and encouragement at crucial stages eventually made my studies a pleasant task. I am greatly indebted to him for his interest, continuous encouragement, constant support, constructive criticism and endless patience.

My grateful thanks is extended to the Commissioner of the South African Police for his kind permission to conduct this research and to the members of his staff for their support and assistance.

To the Head of the Department of Police Science of the University of South Africa, Professor T J van Heerden I wish to convey my heartfelt thanks for his kind assistance, advice and support given to me during my studies. I would also like to thank Dr M van Wyk for his assistance in the theoretical sections of this research.

Posthumously, I offer my gratitude to the late Lt. Col. S. Pillai who was Officer Commanding, South African Police Training College,

Austerville, Durban, for the many long hours he had spent reading through the manuscript and for the constructive suggestions he had offered.

Professor J F Butler-Adams, Director of the Institute for Social and Economic Research of the University of Durban-Westville, and to Mr R D Ramkisson of the Department of Psychology I wish to offer my sincere thanks for their advice on the empirical study of this research.

To Mrs Lucille also for her enthusiasm and efficiency in the typing of this thesis, I offer my thanks.

Further, it is my great pleasure to thank my wife and children for their encouragement and assistance rendered me throughout my period of study.

CONTENTS

		Page
<u>CHAPTER 1</u>	<u>: THE PURPOSE, SCOPE AND INVESTIGATION OF THE PRESENT STUDY</u>	
1	<u>The Investigation</u>	1
1.1	<u>Introduction</u>	1
1.2	<u>The Purpose of the Investigation</u>	3
1.3	<u>Delimitation of the Inquiry</u>	4
1.4	<u>Authority to Proceed with the Research</u>	4
1.5	<u>Methodology</u>	4
1.5.1	Socio-Historical Method	4
1.5.2	The Case Analysis Method	6
1.5.2.1	Collection of Personal Evidence	7
1.5.2.2	Exposing Experience and Attitudes	8
1.5.2.3	Pointers for Further Research	8
1.5.2.4	The Interview	8
1.5.2.5	The Questionnaire	9
1.5.3	Sampling Methods	10
1.5.4	Statistical Method	12
1.6	<u>Review of Literature</u>	14
1.7	<u>Official Documents</u>	25
1.7.1	Annual Reports of the Commissioner of Police from 1860-1912	25
1.7.2	Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police from 1913-1981	25
1.7.3	Regulations for the South African Police contained in Government Notice No. R203 in Government Gazette Ordinary No. 719	25
1.7.4	Standing Orders of the South African Police	26
1.7.5	Police Act	26

	Page	
1.7.6	Acts of Parliament	26
1.8	<u>Scientific Journals</u>	26
1.9	<u>Conference Material</u>	27
1.10	<u>Definition of Concepts</u>	28
1.11	<u>Difficulties Encountered in the Research</u>	29
1.12	Presentation of Material	30
	References	33

## SECTION A

<u>CHAPTER 2</u>	: <u>THE PHILOSOPHY OF POLICING</u>	
2	<u>The Meaning, Role and Roots of Policing and its Development in South Africa up to 1913</u>	40
2.1	<u>Introduction</u>	40
2.2	<u>The Meaning and Role of Policing</u>	41
2.2.1	The Legislature	41
2.2.2	The Judiciary	42
2.2.3	The Executive	42
2.2.4	The Term "Police Force"	44
2.2.5	A "Police Service"	44
2.2.6	The Role of the Police	46
2.2.6.1	The "Guardian of Society" Role	46
2.2.6.2	The Public Servant Role	47
2.2.6.3	The Policeman in his Role as the Instrument of the Law	47

	Page
2.3	<u>The Roots of Policing</u> 49
2.3.1	Traditional Police Work 49
2.3.2	The Development of Police Services in England 54
2.3.2.1	Anglo Saxon Policing 54
2.3.2.2	Norman Policing 56
2.3.2.3	The Westminster Period of Policing 57
2.3.2.4	The Period of Watch and Ward, the Bow Street Runners and Parochial and Commercial Police 58
2.3.2.5	The Work of Henry Fielding 60
2.3.2.6	The Work of Sir Robert Peel 62
2.4	<u>South Africa</u> 64
2.4.1	Early Development 65
2.4.2	The Cape Regiment 71
2.4.3	The Imperial Cape Mounted Riflemen Corps 72
2.4.4	The Cape Police 72
2.4.5	Other Police Forces 73
2.4.6	The Transvaal Police 74
2.4.7	Orange Free State 75
2.4.8	Natal 76
2.4.9	Police Forces after the Union of South Africa - 1910 76
2.4.9.1	The First Regiment 78
2.4.9.2	The Second and Third Regiments 78
2.4.9.3	The Fourth Regiment 78
2.4.9.4	The Fifth Regiment 78
2.5	<u>Conclusion</u> 80
	References 82

	Page	
<u>CHAPTER 3</u> :	<u>THE GENERAL AIMS AND FUNCTIONS OF POLICE ORGANISATIONS</u>	
3	<u>Organisation and Administration</u>	94
3.1	<u>Introduction</u>	94
3.2	<u>The Nature of Organisations</u>	95
3.2.1	Definition	95
3.2.2	Principles of Organisation	96
3.2.3	The Characteristics of Police Organisations	99
3.2.4	The Nature of Police Organisations	100
3.2.5	Types of Police Organisations	101
3.2.5.1	Line Organisation	101
3.2.5.2	Staff Organisation	102
3.2.5.3	The Line-Staff Organisation	102
3.2.6	The Grouping of Similar Tasks	103
3.2.6.1	Organisation by Function	103
3.2.6.2	Organisation by Time	104
3.2.6.3	Organisation by Place	105
3.2.6.4	Organisation by Level of Authority	106
3.2.7	Specialisation	108
3.2.8	Lines of Authority and Chain of Command	110
3.2.9	Unity of Command	110
3.2.10	Span of Control	111
3.2.11	Delegation of Authority	112
3.2.12	Distribution of Responsibility	113
3.2.13	Work Load	113
3.2.14	Co-ordination	114

		Page
3.3	<u>Administration</u>	114
3.3.1	The Bases of Administrative Organisation	116
3.3.1.1	Major Purpose of Function	116
3.3.1.2	Process or Profession	116
3.3.1.3	Cliënteles or Commodity	116
3.3.1.4	Area or Territory	117
3.3.2	Line and Staff Personnel	117
3.3.3	Command of Authority	118
3.3.3.1	Superior Articulation	118
3.3.3.2	Technical Competence	118
3.3.3.3	Command Through Status	118
3.3.3.4	Command Through Sanctions	119
3.3.3.5	Command of Default	119
3.3.3.5.1	The Executive Head	119
3.3.3.5.2	The Head of Department	120
3.3.3.5.3	Assistant Heads	121
3.3.3.5.4	Captains	121
3.3.3.5.5	Lieutenants	121
3.3.3.5.6	Detectives	121
3.3.3.5.7	Sergeants	122
3.3.3.5.8	Policemen	122
3.3.4	Functions	123
3.3.4.1	Primary Services	123
3.3.4.1.1	The Patrol Division	123
3.3.4.1.2	The Detective Division	123
3.3.4.1.3	The Vice Division	124

	Page
3.3.4.1.4	The Youth Division 124
3.3.4.1.5	The Traffic Division 125
3.3.4.2	Ancilliary Services 125
3.3.4.2.1	Records and Communication 125
3.3.4.2.2	Service and Maintenance 126
3.3.4.2.3	Laboratory 126
3.3.4.2.4	Detention Facilities 127
3.3.4.2.5	Property Control 127
3.3.4.3	Administrative Services 127
3.3.4.3.1	Planning 128
3.3.4.3.2	Research 128
3.3.4.3.3	Direction and Co-ordination 128
3.3.4.3.4	Direction 129
3.3.4.3.5	Co-ordination 129
3.3.4.3.6	Reporting 130
3.3.4.3.7	Budgeting 131
3.4	<u>The Quasi-Military Organisation of the Police Force</u> 131
3.5	<u>Conclusion</u> 133
	References 135

## S E C T I O N B

### CHAPTER 4 : THE DEVELOPMENT OF POLICE SERVICES

4	<u>An Analysis of Police Services in Natal</u> 143
4.1	The Development of Policing in the Pre-Union Period in Natal 144

	Page	
4.1.1	Composition of the Force	146
4.1.2	The Object of the Police Force	146
4.1.3	Defence of the Colony	146
4.1.4	The Mounted Police in Natal	147
4.1.5	The Criminal Investigation Officer	147
4.1.6	Other Officers in the Police Force	148
4.1.7	Police Act of 1894 and Police Regulations of 1894	149
4.1.8	The Functions of the Police as contained in the Police Act of 1894	150
4.2	<u>The Development of Policing after Union</u>	150
4.2.1	Police Act, Act No. 14 of 1912	151
4.2.2	Commissioner and Non-Commissioned Ranks	152
4.2.3	The Effects of World War I on the Police Force	153
4.2.4	The Municipal Police, The South African Mounted Rifles and The South African Police	153
4.2.5	The Graham Commission	155
4.2.6	The South African Criminal Bureau	156
4.2.7	The South African Police Gazette	159
4.2.8	Lawlessness on the Rand	159
4.2.9	The Police Dog Depot	161
4.2.10	Medals and Decorations	162
4.2.11	Camel Patrols	162
4.2.12	Mechanising of the Force	163
4.2.13	South West Africa	164
4.2.14	A Two-Way Radio System	164
4.2.15	Unit Value System	166

	Page
4.2.16	Restructuring the Administration at Police Headquarters 166
4.2.17	Police-Public Relations Division 167
4.2.18	Overtime Work for Policemen 168
4.2.19	Police Uniforms 168
4.3	<u>The Role of Indian Policemen prior to Union</u> 169
4.4	<u>Post-Union Development of Indians in the South African Police Force</u> 175
4.4.1	Indian Sergeant S. Beharie 176
4.4.2	Indian Constable I. Jussub 177
4.4.3	Senior Detective Sergeant Moodley 178
4.4.4	Constable Moodley 179
4.4.5	Detective-Sergeant Naidoo 180
4.4.6	Police Promotions 182
4.4.7	Promotion of Indians to Senior Posts 184
4.5	<u>Conclusion</u> 186
	References 189
<u>CHAPTER 5</u>	: <u>THE FUNCTIONS AND ORGANISATION OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN POLICE FORCE</u>
5	<u>The Functions, Organisation and Evaluation of the Force</u> 196
5.1	<u>Introduction</u> 196
5.2	<u>Functions</u> 196
5.2.1	The Preservation of the Internal Security of the Republic 198
5.2.2	The Maintenance of Law and Order 201
5.2.3	The Investigation of Offences or Alleged Offences 202

		Page
5.2.4	The Prevention of Crime	204
5.2.5	Defence of the South African Borders and Combatting of Terrorism	207
5.2.6	Special Duties	209
5.3	<u>The Organisation of the South African Police Force</u>	209
5.3.1	The Hierarchy of the South African Police Force	210
5.3.2	Decentralisation	211
5.3.3	Division of Activity	213
5.3.3.1	Uniform Branch	213
5.3.3.2	Personnel Administration	214
5.3.3.3	Spiritual Guidance	214
5.3.3.4	Inspectorate	214
5.3.3.5	Training of Members	215
5.3.3.6	Financial Administration	215
5.3.3.7	General Administration	216
5.3.3.8	Quartermaster	216
5.3.4	Division of Activity : Criminal Investigation	216
5.3.4.1	Internal Security	217
5.3.4.2	Investigation of Crime	218
5.3.4.3	Dog School	218
5.3.4.4	Crime Prevention	219
5.3.4.5	The South African Criminal Bureau	220
5.3.4.5.1	Disputed Documents	221
5.3.4.5.2	Fire Arms	222
5.3.4.6	The Duties and Functions of the local Finger-Print Offices	223

		Page
5.3.4.6.1	Finger-, Palm-, and Barefoot-Prints at the Scene of the Crime	225
5.3.4.6.2	Photography and Plan drawing	225
5.3.4.6.3	Photographs of Prisoners	226
5.3.4.7	The South African Police Forensic Science Laboratory	226
5.3.4.8	Medico-Legal Matters	227
5.4	<u>Evaluation</u>	228
	References	233
<u>CHAPTER 6</u>	: <u>THE ADMINISTRATION OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN POLICE FORCE</u>	
6	<u>Police Administration</u>	238
6.1	<u>Some General Aspects of Police Administration</u>	238
6.1.1	The Members of the South African Police Force	238
6.1.1.1	The Commissioner of the South African Police	240
6.1.1.2	Commissioned Officers	240
6.1.1.3	Divisional Commissioner	240
6.1.1.4	Divisional Criminal Investigation Officers	242
6.1.1.5	Divisional Inspectors	243
6.1.1.6	District Commandants	243
6.1.1.7	Detective Officers	244
6.1.1.8	District Officers	244
6.1.2	Ranks in the South African Police Force	244
6.1.3	Recruitment	246
6.1.4	Training }	247
6.1.5	Rating	248
6.1.6	Promotions and Transfers	248

		Page
6.1.7	Discipline	255
6.1.8	Personnel Records and Statistics	256
6.1.9	Rewarding Subordinates	257
6.1.10	Decorations	257
6.1.11	Forfeiture	258
6.1.12	Commendations	259
6.1.13	Resignation, Dismissal and Discharge	259
6.2	<u>The Chatsworth South African Police Station</u>	260
6.2.1	The Working Week	261
6.2.2	Attendance Register	262
6.2.3	Shifts	262
6.2.4	Staff Responsibilities of Members at the Chatsworth Police Station	264
6.2.4.1	Administrative Staff	264
6.2.4.2	Charge Office Staff	265
6.2.4.3	Van Drivers and Van Crews	265
6.2.4.4	Hospital Guard	266
6.2.4.5	Liquor and Drug Squad	266
6.2.4.6	Enquiry Staff	266
6.2.4.7	Accident Staff	267
6.2.4.8	Court Orderly	267
6.2.4.9	Convict Guard	267
6.2.4.10	The Section Sergeant	267
6.2.5	Other Personnel	268
6.2.5.1	Commanders : all ranks	268
6.2.5.2	Warrant Officers and Sergeants	268
6.2.5.3	Constables	269

	Page
6.2.5.4	Investigating Officers 269
6.2.6	Maintenance of Discipline 269
6.2.7	Clerical Work 269
6.2.7.1	Information Book 270
6.2.7.2	Pocket Book 270
6.2.7.3	First Information on Crime 272
6.2.7.4	The Occurrence Book 273
6.2.7.5	Case Docket 274
6.2.7.6	The Investigation Diary 276
6.2.7.6.1	The Closing of Dockets 277
6.2.7.7	Lost, Stolen or Found Property S.A.P. II, II(a), II(b) and Enquiry Register 279
6.2.7.8	Case Register S.A.P. 256 280
6.2.7.9	Register of Persons who have to Report to the Police 281
6.2.7.10	Crime Register 281
6.2.7.11	Crime Statistics 283
6.2.7.12	Morale 286
6.3	<u>Conclusion</u> 288
	References 293
<u>CHAPTER 7</u>	: <u>FIELDS OF OPERATION</u>
7	<u>Law Enforcement, Specialisation in the South African Police Force and Police Reservists</u> 298
7.1	<u>Law Enforcement</u> 298
7.2	Executive Services 302
7.3	Primary Services or Activities 303

	Page
7.3.1	The Uniform Branch 303
7.3.1.1	Traffic Control 304
7.3.1.2	The Security Property 304
7.3.1.3	Inspections 304
7.3.1.4	Animal Control 305
7.3.1.5	Personal Contact 305
7.3.1.6	Public Gatherings 305
7.3.1.7	Calls for Assistance 306
7.3.1.8	Preliminary Investigations 306
7.3.1.9	Community Service 306
7.3.1.10	Information Service 307
7.3.1.11	Collection and Preservation of Evidence 307
7.3.1.12	Arrest of Offenders 308
7.3.1.13	Testifying in Court 308
7.4	<u>Specialisation in the South African Police Force</u> 309
7.4.1	The Detective Branch 310
7.4.1.1	Murder 310
7.4.1.2	Murder where Poisoning is Suspected 315
7.4.1.3	Theft 318
7.4.1.4	Rape 321
7.4.2	The Security Branch 324
7.4.3	The Diamond and the Gold Branches 327
7.4.3.1	Diamonds 327
7.4.3.2	Gold 329
7.4.4.	The Commercial Branch 332
7.4.5	Conclusion 334

	Page
7.5	<u>Police Reservists</u> 335
7.5.1	The Origin of Indian Police Reservists 335
7.5.2	Establishment 336
7.5.3	Enlistment 337
7.5.4	Training 338
7.5.5	The Grouping of Police Reservists 339
7.5.6	Uniform and Equipment 341
7.5.7	Promotion Examinations 341
7.5.8	Insignia and Designation 342
7.5.9	Discipline 342
7.5.10	Charge Office and Outdoor Duty 342
7.5.11	The Duties of Police Reservists on Patrol 343
7.5.12	The Responsibilities of the Reservists on Guard Duty 345
7.5.13	Evaluation 346
	References 347
<u>CHAPTER 8</u>	: <u>THE TRAINING OF INDIAN POLICEMEN AND POLICEWOMEN</u>
8	<u>The Course of Training</u> 351
8.1	<u>The Training of Indian Policemen in the South African Police Force</u> 352
8.2	<u>Theoretical Principles of Police Training in South Africa</u> 355
8.2.1	Law 356
8.2.2	Force Administration 356
8.2.3	Investigation of Crime 357
8.2.4	Contact Situations 358

	Page	
8.2.5	Social Evils	360
8.2.6	Physical Training	360
8.3	<u>Recruiting Campaigns</u>	362
8.4	<u>Requirements for Enlistment in the South African Police</u>	364
8.5	<u>Duration and Nature of Training</u>	365
8.6	<u>Practical Training</u>	367
8.7	<u>Theoretical Training</u>	369
8.8	<u>Lectures at the South African Police Training College of Indians in Durban</u>	371
8.9	<u>After Completion of Training</u>	371
8.10	<u>Dismissal, Discharge or Reduction of Non-Commissioned Member of the Force</u>	374
8.11	<u>Promotion Prospects</u>	374
8.12	<u>Salaries and Allowances</u>	375
8.13	<u>Leave</u>	375
8.14	<u>Other Benefits</u>	376
8.15	<u>Indian Policewomen</u>	377
8.16	<u>Conclusion and Evaluation</u>	380
	References	383
	<u>INTRODUCTION TO SECTION C</u>	385
	<u>S E C T I O N C</u>	
	<u>EVALUATION OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN POLICE ORGANISATION WITH REGARD TO INDIAN POLICE SERVICES</u>	

	Page	
<u>CHAPTER 9</u> :	<u>THE VIEWS AND ATTITUDES OF THE INDIAN COMMUNITY TO THE POLICE AND POLICE SERVICES</u>	
9	<u>Methodology and Analysis of Data</u>	388
9.1	<u>The Nature of the Research</u>	388
9.2	<u>Procedure in the Present Study</u>	389
9.2.1	Characteristics of the Research Group	391
9.2.2	The Acceptance of the Police Role	391
9.2.3	Role Expectations	391
9.2.4	Police community Relationships	392
9.2.5	Conclusions and Recommendations	392
9.3	<u>The Analysis of Data</u>	392
9.4	<u>Sampling</u>	394
9.5	<u>Degree of Coverage</u>	396
9.6	<u>Choice of Method for Gathering Information</u>	399
9.7	<u>The Distribution of Questionnaires</u>	401
9.7.1	The Advantages of the Postal Questionnaire	402
9.7.2	The Disadvantages of the Postal Questionnaire	403
9.8	<u>Data Processing and Statistical Analysis of Results</u>	404
9.8.1	Data Processing	404
9.8.2	Methods of Statistically Analysing the Results	406
9.8.3	The Analysis of Data according to the Character- istics of the Population	408
9.9	<u>The Analysis of the Research Group</u>	411
9.9.1	Demographic Characteristics	411
9.9.1.1	Sex	412
9.9.1.2	Language	412

	Page	
9.9.1.3	Education	414
9.9.1.4	Age	415
9.9.1.5	Occupation	416
9.9.1.6	Work Status	417
9.9.1.7	Marital Status	419
9.9.1.8	Police Contact	420
9.10	<u>The Acceptance of the Police Role</u>	422
9.10.1	The Justification of the Existence of the South African Police	422
9.10.2	The Necessity for a Police Service	427
9.10.3	The Importance of the South African Police in Society	430
9.10.4	The Threat to Personal Liberty and Privacy of the Methods and Techniques used by the South African Police Force	433
9.10.5	Factors Influencing the Attitudes of the Respondents Regarding the Methods and Techniques used by the South African Police	437
9.10.6	Police Principles	442
9.11	<u>Role Expectations</u>	446
9.11.1	The Most Important Functions of the South African Police	448
9.11.2	An Assessment of the Efforts of the Police in Preventing Crime	452
9.11.3	Police Protection in Specific Indian Areas	455
9.11.4	The Effectiveness of Police Methods in Reducing the Crime Rate	458
9.11.5	Educational Qualifications for Indian Policemen	463
9.12	<u>Police-Community Relationships</u>	469
9.12.1	Treatment Received by the Respondents from the South African Police	469

		Page
9.12.2	The Role of the Community in Crime Prevention	473
9.12.3	Role Fulfilment	476
9.12.4	Police Honesty	483
9.12.5	The Efficiency of Policemen	494
9.13	<u>A Summary of the most Important Conclusions</u>	498
	References	502

## S E C T I O N D

### CONCLUSIONS, RECOMMENDATIONS AND SUMMARY

#### CHAPTER 10 : CONCLUSIONS, RECOMMENDATIONS AND SUMMARY

10.1	<u>Conclusion</u>	507
10.2	<u>Recommendations</u>	510
10.2.1	Methods and Techniques	510
10.2.2	Control of Temper	510
10.2.3	Crime Prevention	511
10.2.4	Police Patrols	512
10.2.5	Complaints	512
10.2.6	Academic Qualifications	513
10.2.7	Manner of Address	513
10.3	<u>Summary</u>	514

#### **Appendix**

LIST OF TABLES

<u>TABLE</u>		Page
A	The Effect of the Two-Way Radio System on Arrests	165
B	Amendments to Ranks applicable to Indian Policemen since 1970	184
1	Distribution of Questionnaires and Responses Received	398
2	Distribution of Sexes in the Sample	412
3	Distribution of the Respondents according to Language Groups	413
4	The Distribution of the Respondents according to Educational Qualifications	414
5	The Distribution of Respondents by Age	415
6	The Distribution of Respondents by Occupation	416
7	The Work Status of the Respondents	418
8	The Marital Status of the Respondents	419
9	The Nature of Contact of the Respondents	421
10	The Justification for the Existence of the South African Police Force	424
11	The Necessity for Police Services : The Analysis according to Age Groups	428
12	The Importance of the South African Police in Society	431
13	The Attitude of the Contact Groups to the Methods and Techniques by the South African Police	435
14	Attitude Forming Responses based on Question 12	439
15	The Importance of Police Principles	444

		Page
16	The Most Important Functions of the South African Police as Rated by the Respondents	451
17	An Evaluation of the Efforts of the Police in Preventing Crime	453
18	Police Protection in Specific Indian Areas	456
19	Requirements for Effective Policing	460
20	Educational Qualifications Suggested for Officers According to the Educational Qualifications of the Respondents	465
21	Educational Qualifications Suggested for Non-Officers According to the Educational Qualifications of the Respondents	467
22	An Evaluation of the Treatment received by the Respondents from Policemen in the South African Police According to Contact Groups	470
23	The Opinion of the Respondents regarding their Duty in Assisting the Police to Combat Crime	475
24	The Degree of Conduct of Policemen when Handling Complaints	478
25	Community Assistance to the South African Police Force	482
26	The Honesty of Policemen according to Educational Groups	485
27	Attitude Forming Experiences to Educational Groups	491
28	The Efficiency of the South African Police Force as Perceived by the Different Age Groups	495

## C H A P T E R 1

### THE PURPOSE, SCOPE AND SIGNIFICANCE OF THE PRESENT STUDY

#### 1. The Investigation

##### 1.1 Introduction

The fact that in a relatively young country like the Republic of South African only one great national police force has functioned since 1913 - in comparison with the provincial, regional, city or district police forces of much older countries - excites ones curiosity and has created an interest in the writer to examine the role of Indian policemen in the South African Police Force. It has given rise to many questions such as : How did Indians in the South African Police Force develop from pre-Union police forces? What role have they been playing since then in the organisation and administration of the

Force? How are Indian policemen trained to fulfil their role? And are Indian policemen fulfilling their role in the community they serve?.

Research into this subject has been fascinating and there has not been a moment when the writer did not find this exercise very stimulating and exciting.

Intellectual curiosity works in different ways for different people but for the writer it was to learn more about one of the most interesting fields in criminology, namely the police; in particular Indian policemen in the South African Police Force.

Public interest in the South African Police has increased over the last decade. This research venture will undoubtedly be of interest to all those who are keen to learn about the activities of the Force. The aim of the present study is to uncover the attitudes of the research group towards Indian policemen and to explore their role in the South African

Police Force.

The results generated from this research project would be of value not only in the context of the course for which it was conducted, but for the wider community as well. It is mainly through the present study that the writer's understanding of policing has been greatly enhanced.

## 1.2

### The Purpose of the Investigation

This investigation attempts to present a scientific exposition of the development, functioning and community relationship of the Indian Police in the South African Police Force. The training and work responsibilities of all policemen in the Force are the same.

An analysis of the opinions and attitudes of a sample of Indian respondents was also made. This is an aspect which should not be neglected if a good relationship is to be maintained between the police and the public.

It is hoped that the present study would

be a valuable aid for a better understanding of the role of Indian policemen in the Force.

### 1.3 Delimitation of the Inquiry

The investigation is limited to the investigation of policing in the Metropolitan area of Durban served by Indian members of the South African Police. The study began in 1974 and was completed in 1982.

### 1.4 Authority to Proceed with the Research

Before embarking on this project authority had to be obtained from the Commissioner of the South African Police Force, (see Appendix 1) particularly for the information used in this research, and the interviews which had to be conducted with in-service and retired Indian policemen.

### 1.5 Methodology

The following research methods were employed :

#### 1.5.1 Socio-Historical Method

History aims at preservation of the memory

of notable men and deeds which might serve as a valuable lesson to future mankind.<sup>1</sup>

The use of historical data rests on the acceptance of the fact of a causal connection between the previous history of any group and its social institutions, and the present state of the group and its social institutions. The past holds the key to the future. Nothing occurs in a vacuum, everything has a history, a natural development of which the present is the logical outcome. Though the present differs from the past it is shaped by the past. No individual and certainly no social scientist, can ignore the far reaching influence of the past. In fact the value and significance of historical data in the present research is indisputable.<sup>1</sup> The significance of the past lies in how and how much it has influenced and shaped the present and by shaping the present, will influence the future.

The writer has endeavoured to reconstruct the past of Indian policing with the object

of establishing its influence on the present, of deciding what conditions should be improved, and of indicating what areas of policing should be taken into consideration in future planning.

A review of the history of policing and of all its manifestations and associations is necessary. Here the historical method is invaluable. For example, to understand present day police organisation and policy, it must be related to those of the past.

The writer confined himself to the following major sources of historical information namely, documents, official publications, text books and personal sources of authentic observers and witnesses, for example ex- and in- service policemen. This information was used to provide the missing link in the history of Indians in the South African Police Force.

#### 1.5.2 The Case-Analysis Method

Case-analysis is one of the most important

research methods of the social sciences.

Case-analysis is a method of investigating and analysing the life of a social entity. The "case" that is, the object of study may be : a person, an episode in a person's life, a family, an institution, a group, even a community or a culture, in short, any aspect of empirical reality reacted to as a unit.<sup>3</sup>

The function of case analysis is the study and analysis of the observable details of a case. It involves an intensive investigation of specific factors attaching to the case. The value of case-analysis is evident from the following, especially when it is supplemented by other techniques and methods for example :

- 1.5.2.1 It affords the investigator the opportunity of collecting personal evidence, of making personal contact with informants and of investigating far more accurately certain features, reactions and factors of each case.



- 1.5.2.2 It is a means for exposing the actual experiences and attitudes of a case. According to Thomas and Znaniecki<sup>4</sup> personal case data is "the perfect type of sociological material", since they constitute a more revealing and fundamentally real record of personal experiences, with a wealth of concrete details, live memories, tense situations - all of which may easily elude expert investigators employing other methods or techniques.
- 1.5.2.3 Case studies and case data are of importance in pure research since they provide pointers for further research. They may yield fruitful hypotheses or interesting data for testing. In applying the case analysis method the investigator employs certain skills and aids, including interviews, observations, evaluations, questionnaires, etcetera. Two of these skills were used in the present study:
- 1.5.2.4 The Interview

The interview is a direct method of obtaining

information in a face-to-face situation. Though it is a somewhat time-consuming and expensive approach, it is sometimes preferred to the questionnaire particularly where the investigation concerns matters of a personal nature. The advantages of the interview technique include the following:

The interview situation permits the establishment of greater rapport. This makes it possible for the respondents to give more complete answers.

The interviewer is able to note signs of evasions and non-co-operation not only through verbal behaviour but also through his facial expressions, body movements and gestures.

#### 1.5.2.5 The Questionnaire

The questionnaire is a document normally distributed by post (like in the present study) to be filled by the respondent himself in his own time. The questionnaire posted to the research group included rating

ranking and attitude type questions. Attitude scales were compiled with a view to obtaining a quantitative measurement of a person's position on a unidimensional attitude continuum. The measurement of attitude is particularly important in basic research and it has the advantage of being economical and reasonably easy to apply.

### 1.5.3 Sampling Methods

It is very seldom that all the elements of a particular population are used. A limited number of elements from the population about which information is desired is referred to as the "sample". In the present context, a population refers to a set of individuals who share at least one characteristic for example, members on the voter's roll. In point of fact, surveys are rarely taken of each and every member of a given population. By virtue of his limited resources, the writer studied a sample, a smaller number of individuals who are in some way representative of the population. Through

sampling the writer wishes to indicate the tendencies in thought and attitude of the research group towards Indian policemen and policing.

How did the writer go about the task of drawing a sample in which he had an interest? The selection was made on the basis that each and every member of the population was given an equal chance of being drawn into the sample.<sup>5</sup> A number was allotted to each member of the population and the sample was drawn in accordance with a list of random numbers. Such lists are expertly compiled to ensure true randomness.

The following are some of the advantages derived from the use of samples:

- 1.5.3.1 A sample must be used when it is impossible to use the entire population.
- 1.5.3.2 Even when it is possible to use the entire population, it is better (from an economic point of view) to use a sample.

1.5.3.3 The use of samples is the obvious method if the material is going to be destroyed or altered by the research process.

1.5.3.4 A sample may be studied more intensively and more accurately than would be possible if the whole population were used.

#### 1.5.4 Statistical Method

When a mass of data has been assembled it is necessary to arrange the material in some concise and logical order. This procedure is known as tabulation. The assembled data may be compiled from questionnaires which have been answered and mailed in by informants. Statistical data that are classified according to magnitude or size are very often arranged in the form of a frequency distribution.

Statistical tables have been referred to as the "shorthand of statistics". No matter what type of statistical problem one is investigating, there will almost invariably be a need for tables.

The advantages of presenting statistical data in tabular form are inter alia:

- 1.5.4.1 It helps to conserve space and reduce explanatory and descriptive statements to a minimum,
- 1.5.4.2 Comparisons are greatly facilitated by tables, and
- 1.5.4.3 Tabular data can be more easily remembered than data which is not tabulated.<sup>6</sup>

P.V. Young<sup>7</sup> points out that in most fact-finding research, the objective of the researcher is to describe the attitudes of a sample of respondents on a particular issue, in which case he might count the frequency with which various responses occur by casting these results in the form of a frequency distribution.

In the present study, besides using the total number of scores (N) and percentages, the writer also uses a summary description of the frequency distribution. Such a

measure describes the data by its "average" or "typical" value and is referred to as a measure of central tendency.

#### 1.6. Review of Literature

Recent literature on the police role and police-community relationships reveal that the very definition of the police function has been the subject of such a high volume of comment in the last two decades.

Routh<sup>8</sup> states that there is a general agreement that the police find themselves "in the middle" of disputes they did not cause and are responsible for the enforcement of laws they did not make. The main controversy centres on whether the police should be non involved enforcers of the law, or whether they should expand their service functions, actively working to reduce the conditions which cause crime and injustice in their areas. This section will summarise some of the literature on both sides.

J.Q. Wilson<sup>9</sup> mentions that the service

orientation requires some further delimitation because there is a significant difference between non punitive service duties and community involvement. Regarding the former C. Chamberline<sup>10</sup> has pointed out that the service function normally associated with the local police may be the single best means of maintaining strong support.

On the other hand the advocates of community involvement like C.S. Mihanovich<sup>11</sup> urge active police participation in all community solving activities, and a more emphatic concern with justice as well as with law.

N. Watson<sup>12</sup> and W.E. Thompson<sup>13</sup> are of the opinion that the police cannot operate in a vacuum because the social problems prevalent in the community can no longer be neglected. The police cannot remain passive bystanders, they must engage in service work.

Others such as Professor Herman Goldstein<sup>14</sup> consider it more difficult to avoid any

type of political directionality, while still striving for understanding of the issues at hand. A.C. Germaine<sup>15</sup> asserts that it is possible to work against the roots of crime without becoming politically committed.

Dr Morton Bard<sup>16</sup> a psychologist, states that both aspects of the service role tend to become indistinguishable in practice. His findings were based on the fact that, as part of their service, the police are often called upon to intervene in family disputes. More than 50 percent of all mentally ill patients are first contacted by the police. Police officers were frequently injured on such calls, although for obvious reasons complaints were seldom filed.

J.D. Lohman<sup>17</sup> and M. Barton<sup>18</sup> feel that the police are called upon to perform too many duties unrelated to law enforcement and do a good deal of complaining about "having to do work they consider to be

beneath the dignity of the law such as impounding stray dogs and putting up no parking signs.

Advocates of both the enforcement and involvement orientations agree that the rapid social changes of the last two decades have made the task of law enforcement more difficult. Jerome Skolnick<sup>19</sup> notes two major ambiguities of the police role. The first, and perhaps most central, is the subjective nature of standards for the enforcement of much of the law, especially, as H. Goldstein<sup>20</sup> says, law relating to minor crimes.

The second ambiguity Skolnick notes is the question of which law to enforce. Clearly, it is impossible to enforce all the laws all the time; hence intentionally or not, some laws will not be enforced or some laws will only be enforced for part of the time.

Coe and Duke<sup>21</sup> mention that if much of

the operational decision-making in law enforcement is essentially subjective, it is necessary that the officer is able to identify quickly and accurately the potential lawbreaker and be able to distinguish him from the law-abiding citizen.

The author notes that today there is even less certainty that behaviour and attitude towards the police will follow predictably from the social standing of groups or individuals.

The International Association of Chiefs of Police has voiced the concern of many law enforcement professionals that the balance between the rights of the individual and the rights of society has swung too far toward the former, resulting in a deleterious effect on police capacity to maintain law and order.

J.E. Towler<sup>22</sup> points out also that law, the basis for police legitimacy, has been affected by social change. Two aspects

appear to have gained particular attention from professional writers - the intentionally broken law as a tool for furthering some social or political goal, and the consequences for police of enforcing laws during demonstrations not specifically aimed at breaking them.

R.M. Selzman<sup>23</sup> and B.J. George<sup>24</sup> refer to political demonstrations not aimed at symbolically breaking a particular law but which present a greater problem for the police. In the former case, arrest is an expected end, in fact a required part of the demonstration, here those participating are likely to interpret enforcement as an expression of official disapproval of the purpose of the demonstration. It is of interest here that the police do have, by virtue of their discretionary powers, the power not to arrest. The wise exercise of such an elusive discretionary power may well mean the difference between a harmless demonstration and a destructive riot.

With regard to professionalization T.J. Aaron<sup>25</sup> explains that in American society professionalization has generally been accepted as a means of both gaining public respect and improving the effectiveness of law enforcement. The concept as presented in the literature, has two aspects: individual professionalization concerns the education and job performance of every officer, departmental professionalization entails organizational changes, the adoption of sophisticated technologies, and the improvement of methodologies and physical plants for training.

R. Hildebrand<sup>26</sup> has suggested that one of the major reasons for University educated men avoiding police service is that the immediate prospects for service as a patrolman do not appeal to many. He suggests in his article that one way of attracting more highly educated recruits is direct entry into the detective branch. He asserts that lateral entry is perhaps the key to the pro-

blem of professionalization. He further states that if it were an accomplished fact, salary structures would improve; it would obviate the need for tenure, and law enforcement could successfully recruit University trained personnel.

P.M. Whisenand<sup>27</sup> states that along with recruitment, much of the literature on improving educational levels has stressed programs for those already in the force. He points out that there is a growing interest of the federal government sending working policemen back to school. Frank Day<sup>28</sup> has echoed this thought in his article also.

The idea of training revolves around the technological explosion that has shaken most sectors of our society since the second world war. As A.F. Coon<sup>29</sup> has stated law enforcement does not want to be left at the post, and its hopes for professionalization revolve a good deal round expertise in the areas of techno=

logical enforcement.

The literature on training is extensive. It is widely recognised that, along with improved education and training, individual professionalization entails instilling a professional attitude in the officer - a pride and confidence which has been described by B.C. Brannon<sup>30</sup> as a combination of respect for the public and respect for one's abilities as an officer.

There is an abundance of literature on how the officer can make the most of his personal contacts with the public. K.W. Haagensen<sup>31</sup> states that common courtesy is now a major concern and that it should also be considered a form of crime prevention. One is likely to have more respect for law if one has increased respect for those enforcing it.

Technological advances and the search for greater effectiveness have led to important changes in police organizational

structure. As D.M. Cowley<sup>32</sup> points out, the computer has become a necessity for most major police departments, it requires not only new skills; but new concepts of organisation. This would involve setting up a new department of data processing, which is separate from the records department, but takes over much of its functions. The use of helicopters creates the need for a special section staffed with pilots and perhaps maintenance personnel. The organisation of the future will necessarily have more diversity - but the potential for greatly increased effectiveness as well.

In another study by Professor A.C. Germaine<sup>33</sup> in one of the few articles in professional literature seeking to understand the youth subculture, has suggested that their view of the police is based on the assumption that the police defend current conventions primarily because the police themselves feel strongly and personally challenged. G.L. Kuchel and A.P. Pottavina<sup>34</sup> in

examining the attitudes between the lower-working class, and upper-class schools said it was primarily a result of their frequent contact with the police. The working and upper-class students had much larger totals under "don't know," while the lower class showed very low totals for this heading. Substantive results from the survey showed that the lower class youth had greater fear of, and less respect for the police than the other two groups, but the blacks tended to see the police job as better paid and more desirable than did the other two.

H.R. Mayet<sup>35</sup> in his study of "The Role and Image of the South African Police in Society from the Point of View of the Coloured People in Johannesburg" concluded that to improve the police image sound relationships with the public should be established. "These relationships can only be achieved if the police are made aware of their obligation to maintain

order, a high degree of efficiency in police performances is forthcoming, laws are enforced impartially and more humane attitudes towards all citizens are practised. These retarding factors in the role fulfilment which creates a poor image, should be viewed as a challenge by leaders of the organisation, for improvement."

#### 1.7 Official Documents

The following documents were consulted from which valuable information was extracted:

1.7.1 Annual Reports of the Commissioner of Police from 1860-1912.

1.7.2 Annual Reports of the Commissioner of the South African Police from 1913-1981.

These documents were used to develop a history of the Indians in the police forces prior to and after the establishment of the South African Police Force.

1.7.3 Regulations for the South African Police contained in Government Notice No. R203

in the Government Gazette Ordinary No. 719.

(Regulation Gazette No. 299 of 14 February 1964).

1.7.4 Standing Orders of the South African Police

Orders and instructions of a permanent nature are issued by the commissioner of the South African Police as "Standing" or "Force Orders". This document outlines inter alia, the duties, functions and methods of operation of members of the Force.

1.7.5 The Police Act, Act No. 7 of 1958 consists of information pertaining to the functions, organisation and administration of the South African Police.

1.7.6 Numerous other Acts of Parliament enacted from time to time affecting the functions of the South African Police.

1.8 Scientific Journals

Reports and articles in the following Scientific Journals of Criminology and

Police Science provided the author with much information on the history and organisation of the Police Force :

- 1.8.1 Crime, Punishment and Correction  
A Micro Criminological Journal.
- 1.8.2 Hints on the Investigation of Crime.
- 1.8.3 Abstracts on Criminology and Penology.
- 1.8.4 Abstracts on Police Service.
- 1.8.5 Journal of Criminology, Criminal Law and  
Police Science.
- 1.8.6 Sarp.
- 1.8.7 Nongqai.
- 1.8.8 The Federal Bureau of Investigation Monthly  
Bulletin.
- 1.9 Conference Material

Some useful information was obtained from papers read at the National Criminological Symposium and the Prevention of Crime held at the University of South Africa from

the 28 - 31 August 1973.

## 1.10

Definition of Concepts

The following terms which are used in this thesis are meant to be interpreted as follows :

"Indian" refers to a person who has been classified in terms of the Population Registration Act, Act No. 30 of 1950 as a member of the "Indian-group".

"Police Act" refers to the Police Act, Act No. 7 of 1958 as amended.

"Police" are agents of the State whose function it is to maintain law and order and to provide for the collective internal security of the nation.

"Member" is used to mean individuals in the South African Police Force.

"Department" refers to the South African Police as a State Department.

"Beat" an area assigned for patrol purposes,

whether foot or motorised.

"Role" may be defined as something that is done by the police in a particular position, or as the pattern of actions expected or required of the police in a particular situation.

"community" is a spatially restricted group within a society, with its own characteristics, physical living conditions, institutions and a cultural pattern peculiar to itself.

"Division" means any area as defined in section one of the Act.

#### 1.11 Difficulties Encountered in the Research

The main difficulty experienced by the writer in the course of his research was as follows :

the author experienced difficulties financially. Unfortunately, all attempts

to obtain financial support for the project were unsuccessful. There was much travelling to be done especially to libraries, archives, and to conduct interviews with police personnel and ex-policemen.

#### 1.12 Presentation of Material

The material is presented in the following manner : Chapter 1 is an introduction to the thesis in which the author discusses such aspects as : the choice of the subject, the aims of the investigation, research , etcetera.

In Section A there are two chapters : Chapter 2 is devoted to a discussion of the general philosophical approach to policing. Chapter 3 is confined to an outline of the general aims and functions of police organisations.

Section B consists of five chapters on the development of Indian Policemen in the South African Police Force :

Chapter 4 outlines the historical development of police services in South Africa including the introduction of Indian policemen into the Force.

Chapter 5 deals with the functions of the South African Police and the way the Force has been organised to accomplish their functions.

Chapter 6 gives an exposition of the general administration of the South African Police in the Republic and an outline of the administration of a police station manned by Indians is discussed.

Chapter 7 is divided into two sections the first section is concerned with the principles and objectives of law enforcement. The second section is an outline of the executive services of the police force.

Chapter 8 contains a discussion of the theoretical principles of Police Training in South African and the practical training given to Indian Policemen.

Section C has chapter (9) on the views and attitudes of a selected sample, to the police and police services. Section D also has a chapter (10) consisting of the conclusion, recommendations and a summary of the thesis.

REFERENCES

1. Young, P.V. : Scientific Social Surveys and Research, Prentice-Hall, Inc., New York, 1946. Chap. IX.
2. Ibid. p. 146.
3. Doby, J.T.(ed) : An Introduction to Social Research, The Stockpole Company, Harrisburg, Penn= sylvania, 1954, p. 230.
4. Quoted by Young, P.V. op. cit. pp. 235-236.
5. Ferman, G.S. & Levin, J. : Social Science Research, Scheukman Publishing Company, Massachuttes, 1975, pp. 48-49.
6. Young P.V. : op.cit. Chap. XI.
7. Ibid.
8. Quoted by Grabor, I and Low, C : "The Police Role in the Community", Criminology, Vol. 10, No. 4, February, 1973, p. 386.

9. Wilson, J.Q. : Varieties of Police Behaviour, Harvard University Press, Massachusetts, 1968, pp. 200-206.
10. Chamberline, C.: "Police Relations in the Small Department," Law and Order, Vol. 16, No. 9. 1968, p. 108
11. Mihanovich, C.S.: "Programming for citizen participation in Police action Programs", Police Chief, Vol. 32, No. 3. pp. 27-33.
12. Watson, N. : "Community Development for better Police Community relations" in A.F. Brandstatter and L.A. Radel (ed.) Police Community Relations: A Source book, Free Press, New York, 1963, pp. 196-202.
13. Thompson, W.E. : "Police as community leaders",

Proceedings of the Institute  
on Police-Community Relations,  
New York, 1965, section B.

14. Goldstein, H. : "Police response to urban crisis", Public Administration Review, Vol. 28, No. 5, 1968, pp. 393-430.
15. Germaine, A.C. : "The police, a mission and role", Police Chief, Vol. 37, No. 1, 1970, pp. 16-19.
16. Bard, M. : "Family intervention police teams as a community mental health resource", Journal of Criminal Law, Criminology and Police Science, Vol. 60, No. 2, 1967, pp. 247-250.
17. Lohman, J.D. : "Why human relations training for police?" in A.F. Brandstatter and L.A. Radel (eds.), Police Community Relations : Source book, Free Press,

- New York, 1968, pp. 316-322.
18. Banton, M. : The Police in the Community,  
Oxford University Press,  
London, 1964, Chaps, 3-4.
19. Skolnick, J. : Justice Without Trial :  
Law Enforcement in a  
Democratic Society, New  
York, 1966, pp. 204-227.
20. Goldstein, H. : "Police discretion : the  
ideal vs. the real", Public  
Administration Review,  
Vol. 23, No. 3. pp. 140-143.
21. Coe, R.M. & : "Public attitude towards  
Duke, A.B. the police", Police, Vol. 8,  
No. 1, 1963, pp. 73-76.
22. Towlar, J.E. : The Police Role in Racial  
Conflicts, Charles, C. Thomas,  
Springfield, Ill., 1964.
23. Selzman, R.M. ; "The police, the public,  
public order and the law",

- Police Chief, Vol. 36,  
No. 3, pp. 36-39.
24. George, B.J. : "Police practices and the citizen", Police, Vol. 10, No. 4, 1966, pp. 38-42.
25. Aaron, T.J. : "The decline of public order: time for a change in law enforcement philosophy", Police, Vol. 9, No. 6. pp. 26-27.
26. Hildebrand, J.A.: "The detective bureau : a path to professionalization in metropolitan police departments", Police, Vol. 13, No. 3, pp. 41-47.
27. Whisenand, P.M. : "Equipping men for professional development in police service : the Federal Law Enforcement Assistance Act of 1965", Journal of Criminology and Police

- Science, Vol. 57, 1966,  
pp. 223-227.
28. Day, F. : "Administration of Criminal  
Justice : An Educational  
Design in Higher Education",  
Journal of Criminal Law,  
Criminology and Police  
Science, Vol. 56, No. 4,  
1965, pp. 540-544.
29. Coon, T.F. : "Law Enforcement technology  
welcomes the 'chopper copper'",  
Police, Vol. 13 (May/June),  
pp. 6-8.
30. Brannon, B.C. : "Professional development  
of law enforcement", in A.F.  
Bradstatter and L.A. Radel  
(eds.), Police - Community  
Relations : A Source book,  
Free Press, New York, 1968,  
pp. 302-316.
31. Haagensen, K.W. : "Are we really getting  
through to people?", F B I

- Law Enforcement Bulletin,  
February, 1969, pp. 8-10.
32. Cowley, D.M. : "The police and the  
computer", Police Management  
Review, Vol. 2, No. 3, 1965.
33. Germaine, H.C. : The police, a mission and  
a role", Police Chief,  
Vol. 37, No. 1, pp. 16-19.
34. Kuchel, G.H. & : "Juveniles look at their  
Pottavina, A.V. police", Police, Vol. 13,  
March/April), 1969.
35. Mayet, H.R. : The Role and Image of the  
South African Police in  
Society from the Point of  
View of the Coloured People  
in Johannesburg, Unpublished  
M.A. dissertation, University  
of South Africa, 1976.

C H A P T E R 2THE PHILOSOPHY OF POLICING2. The Meaning, Role and Roots of Policing and its Development in South Africa up to 19132.1 Introduction

The idea of policing runs parallel to the historical development of the concept of social control. The emergence of modern policing is the end product of social change. There has been inter alia, a natural increase in population, urbanisation, industrial and technical development.<sup>1</sup> These factors have been to a large extent responsible for the increase in crime especially in the cities. Consequently, man's expectations and obligations concerning policing, and his relationship with the police are historically rooted in the process of social change. It is difficult to make a study of a modern police force without first placing it in historical perspective.<sup>2</sup> To achieve this purpose the writer has divided this chapter into three sections which deal with: The meaning and role of Policing; The

roots of Policing; and Policing in South Africa up to and including 1913.

## 2.2 The Meaning and Role of Policing

One of the main duties of the state is to safeguard the community against dangers that may threaten it. In accordance with Montesquieu's theory<sup>3</sup> of trias politica the three functions of the government are the legislative, the judicial and the executive authority. To prevent too large a concentration of power in one organ, these functions should be entrusted to three bodies independent of one another.<sup>4</sup>

The bodies are similarly indicated by the terms legislative authority, judicial authority and executive authority.

- 2.2.1 The legislature<sup>5</sup> lays down regulations, some of which aim at protecting the community from danger. In addition, the legislature acts in a protective capacity when it attaches sanctions to non-compliance with certain norms either because non-compliance conflicts with the sense of justice, or simply because compliance with the norm is in the interest of the community. Legislative action is preventive. Its system of sanctions against

non-compliance with specified norms, authorises repressive action by the judicial and the executive powers.

2.2.2 The judiciary<sup>6</sup> acts only against dangers threatening legal order. This is done as far as possible by remedying breaches of the law and also by inflicting punishment. In inflicting punishment however, the judicial authority is limited to infringements which the legislator recognises as offences. The judiciary judges whether a crime has been committed and whether a sanction should be applied. The repressive aspect of the judiciary is the main one, but it cannot be denied that in applying sanctions it also functions preventively.

2.2.3 The executive<sup>7</sup> guards against danger by implementing the regulations the legislator recognises as necessary for its prevention. This action is preventive. Besides this the executive, as far as possible, restores order when it has been disturbed. When the disturbance of order constitutes an offence, the executive hands the perpetrator over to the judiciary. This action is repressive, but it is preventive too, since

it prevents the further materialisation of the danger. The particular section of the executive charged with this function is the police.<sup>8</sup>

The legislature, the judiciary and the police collaborate for the maintenance of order.<sup>9</sup>

Yet there is an essential difference in the way each fulfils its task. The legislature lays down regulations that are generally applicable, the judiciary inflicts punishment, and the police maintain order by force, if necessary - and hand the offender over to the judicial authority.

The word police (polisie, politie) is derived from the Greek politeia (Latin: politia)<sup>10</sup> which means state authority. Politeia is in turn derived from polites which means the inhabitant of a state - which has its origin in polis (city).<sup>11</sup>

The tendency to divide the aim of policing into two main categories namely, law enforcement and the keeping of the peace, implies that police institutions are really two institutions in one - institutions with closely related

but not identical aims. Therefore, any functional strategy designed to promote the more effective realisation of one aim tends to hinder the realisation of the other. This situation will determine whether there is a police force or a police service.<sup>12</sup>

2.2.4 The term "police force" has an obvious analogical connection with "military force", these are two social services that were at one stage linked together. In both cases the word "force" indicates a group of professional people, and not their function. A police force is oriented towards the penal and deterrent elements of social control. It applies the law by arresting and prosecuting transgressors and by investigating crimes. The realization of this aim is promoted by means of specialisation, a strong hierarchical authority - structure, a high degree of mobility, and advanced system of communication, clear rules, regulations and arrest procedures, close surveillance over society and a high standard of integrity.<sup>13</sup>

2.2.5 A "police service" is directed toward the execution of preservational and protective

aspects of social control. Its efficiency is not measured in statistical terms but is reflected inter alia, in an absence of crime, a generally positive image of the police, the degree of support and assistance forthcoming from the public.<sup>14</sup>

The police force and the police service are not irreconcilable entities. They represent the two extreme poles on the aim realization continuum. A balance is the most desirable result to aim at.

The rendering of social service remains consistent with the realization of the primary aim. This aim cannot be realised effectively by a police force that enforces the law but neglects the service aspect. Law enforcement is scarcely possible in the absence of social services. Social services are a necessity. They improve the image of the police and they are the best means of preventing actual crime.<sup>15</sup>

The true philosophy of policing includes the idea of giving support and assistance to all and is not directed per se at negative prohibition and punishment. It includes inter

alia, a socialisation function by encouraging compliance with the laws by using various methods of changing behaviour and by promoting the acceptance of social control.<sup>16</sup>

#### 2.2.6 The Role of the Police

E. Johnson<sup>17</sup> attempted to delineate the various roles played by the police in the course of performing their duties. He found that the roles fell onto various points along a continuum ranging from control to supportive functions.

##### 2.2.6.1 The Guardian of Society Role

E. Johnson<sup>18</sup> states that in this role the police see themselves as sentries manning battlements in a war on crime. This role centres about search, chase and capture as a typical sequence of activities. When engaged in this role the police are more likely to have a high morale and a favourable self image because he is engaged in what he regards as "real police work". Under these conditions, the police goals are clear-cut: apprehend the offender, bring him before the court and bring the chase to a satisfactory

close.

#### 2.2.6.2 The Public Servant Role

At the supportive end of the role continuum is the public servant. In this role the police attempt to meet the needs of individuals in crises. These include inter alia, finding lost children and referring individuals to emergency services. Because other community agencies usually do not provide round-the-clock services, the law enforcement agencies fill in the institutional vacuum. In situations where the middle-class member is likely to call upon the family physician, clergyman or attorney, the lower status person becomes a "client" of the policeman.

#### 2.2.6.3 The Policeman in his Role as Instrument of the Law

The policeman frequently becomes a third party in disputes in which his arrest decision fixes liability in civil cases and extends the social stigma of criminal status to such incidents as labour disputes and racial unrests.<sup>19</sup>

To achieve optimum police effectiveness and to achieve a personal sense of worth, policemen

realise that they have multiple tasks to perform in addition to identifying and apprehending persons committing criminal offences. The recognition and acceptance of this public service role is the first step toward creating the attitude necessary for improvement of relations between the public and the police.

The whole development of the police in free societies has been in response to the demands of society for relief from problems that cannot be solved in another way. If no-one committed crime and everyone behaved reasonably in public, observed the law, and was prepared to help less fortunate citizens in times of sudden emergencies, then there would be no need for a sophisticated police force. The police provide a service that, in effect, cements over some of the cracks in the structure of society. All of its services are supplementary to others. For example, the prevention of crime by police is supplementary to the requirement that each citizen should take reasonable precautions to safeguard his own property. No one is expected to leave

valuable property where it can be easily taken by a thief. Similarly, police normally aid people who are faced with an emergency which is out of their ordinary experience and for which there is no other suitable remedy.

### 2.3 The Roots of Policing

Police work is an ancient calling.<sup>20</sup> Historians do not know when policing actually began. Drawings on caves indicate that even prehistoric men knew something of police responsibilities.<sup>21</sup> T.F. Adams<sup>22</sup> supports this statement when he mentions that thousands of years ago the leaders of early civilisation found it necessary to promulgate regulations to make the community civilised and to keep it as such.

#### 2.3.1 Traditional Police Work

Some historians believe that homo sapiens existed in Africa or Asia at least 250 000 years ago, but recorded history states that man existed as far back as 3 200 B.C.<sup>23</sup> Prehistoric men were members of a small group living together for mutual benefit and protection. Soon family groups merged into tribes

or communal units.<sup>24</sup> Each communal unit appointed men they considered to be the most reliable to protect the interests of the clan.<sup>25</sup> Their duties were to wage war with hostile clans and to enforce various regulations developed by the tribe itself.<sup>26</sup> This meant that there was a merging of military and police functions which was designed to regulate the violator of tribal law. This explains the brutal criminal functions imposed on violators in prehistoric times.<sup>27</sup>

Another view held by historians was that the head of the clan delegated police functions to clansmen rather than to a particular group.<sup>28</sup> In the absence of a police force the clan was held responsible for the maintenance of law and order. They also administered justice as a group for any of the rules which were violated. The military function of dealing with hostile tribes remained a group responsibility.<sup>29</sup>

The third view held that primitive men attributed the violations of tribal rules to the influence of evil spirits. In prehistoric

times evil spirits were the object of placation of tribal ritualistic punishment of the alleged offender.<sup>30</sup>

The Persians, Babylonians, Egyptians and Romans had great empires. Laws were very often made by absolute rulers and were enforced by armed men. These men were selected from the population of foreigners and slaves. It was believed that such men would be less likely to disobey cruel orders because very often they had no friends to help them.<sup>31</sup>

Hammurabi, the Babylonian king made a very significant contribution to history by establishing the rule of society by law.<sup>32</sup> The existence of a code presupposes a band of officials charged with the enforcement of law.<sup>33</sup>

In the 11th and 12th century B.C. the Assyrians imposed brutal punishments for breaches of the law.<sup>34</sup>

J. Cramer<sup>35</sup> mentioned that during the 4th Dynasty of the Old Kingdom in Egypt (the period between 2815-2294 B.C.) the official

responsible for security in each province was called the "Judge Commander of the Police". The first mention of a police organization was made in 1340 B.C. during the reign of Hur Moheb. He gave great attention to the organization of a police force and as an incentive rewarded efficiency handsomely. A "River Security Unit" was created to ensure safety on the River Nile. The River Police fought piracy, searched suspected ships and protected legitimate activities on the Nile.<sup>36</sup>

Egyptian police services were well developed in ancient times. Policemen were given administrative and judicial powers, they tried cases, passed judgment and executed sentences.<sup>37</sup>

During the period 2400-2100 B.C. police services were also in existence in India. Archaeologists have excavated inter alia, guard rooms or watch houses which were used by policemen or night watchmen to keep order in the streets of the Indus Valley. Hindu mythology states that the first man and

ancestor of the human race was Manu. It is believed that he developed a set of laws between 300 B.C. and A.D. 150. This implies that an executive body existed which was charged with the enforcement of laws and the execution of sentences. Historical records also point out that spies were employed for various types of investigations. Some were skilled in interrogation while others were experts in husbandry. The latter were employed to investigate crimes in rural areas.<sup>38</sup>

In Britain the "Ordo" was a police organization. It consisted of an ex-magistrate who was assisted by a few leading citizens. In the less settled areas policing was by military units. When Alaric the Goth captured Rome in 410 A.D. Emperor Honorius told the Britains to defend themselves against the Picts, Scots and Saxons. The invaders brought to Rome and Britain their own customary laws. Since those days it was difficult to trace the presence of an organized police force until the system again emerged in the Middle Ages.<sup>39</sup>

## 2.3.2 The Development of Police Services in England

Whenever men created units of social organization they tried to avoid chaos and establish a livable order.<sup>40</sup> In every organized society traces of some system of rules for the maintenance of peace and order are to be found.<sup>41</sup> In the following discussion an outline of the development of policing in Britain is given.

### 2.3.2.1 Anglo Saxon Policing

The history of policing in Britain began about the year 600 A.D. The English lived in "tuns" (villages or towns).<sup>42</sup> The head of each family was responsible to the village community for the good behaviour of all the members of his family. The penalty for offences committed was imprisonment. In this respect, the British were fortunate in having a tradition of prevention instead of punishment.<sup>43</sup> They had an overpowering desire for peace.

Police responsibilities merged with paramilitary activities which were imposed on all citizens. The citizens were empowered to act against all thieves, they could even

kill a thief who was in possession of stolen goods.<sup>44</sup>

Criminal law was foreign to the English. During the reign of Alfred the Great a big step forward was taken in the field of law enforcement. Every freeman became a member of a group called a Tithing. This group fought in squads of tens and hundreds. Ten families in a tun equalled a tithing. Each tithing selected a leader who became known as a tithingman.<sup>45</sup>

Tithings were subsequently grouped into unions of ten, this formed a larger group which became known as a Hundred.<sup>46</sup> The leader of a hundred was a Reeve.<sup>47</sup>

The country was further divided into Shires or Counties and a Shire Reeve (Sheriff) was responsible for the peace of the country.

There were two main reasons for group organizations, they were to make the community responsible for its own good order by concerted action, and to establish a kind of census to account for every lawful man and

his place in society. All rogues, vagabonds and sturdy beggars were outside the peace organization.<sup>48</sup>

When an offence was committed there was a "hue and cry" and the village turned out to seek the wrong doer. This practice has been carried out to our day and is the basis for the right to arrest.<sup>49</sup> J.L. Sullivan<sup>50</sup> believes that this was the forerunner of the citizen arrest procedure.

#### 2.3.2.2 Norman Policing

During the reign of William the Conqueror, the Norman invaders establishing a strong central government.<sup>51</sup> When a conflict arose between the indigenous peoples and the invaders a special type of policing was necessary to exploit the native population economically, and to reinforce the power of the invaders.<sup>52</sup>

The office of "constable" was created together with that of the Sheriff. The latter had his work spread throughout the country, therefore he required horses to perform his duties. Every Sheriff's retinue comprised of a well

groomed stable. The keeper of the stable was a "CONESTABULUS" or court of the stable. The English soon shortened his name and called him a constable.<sup>53</sup>

In Norman times the constable was not a police officer but today every policeman in England is known as a constable. The Sheriff has become a Court official.

#### 2.3.2.3 The Westminster Period of Policing

The Statute of Westminster was passed in 1285. By virtue of this Statute many offices in the police field were established. Among them were the offices of bailiff and Justice of the Peace. In the 13th century the bailiff was a law enforcement officer or policeman. Today, the bailiff is an officer of the Court. In the early days he was associated with the first police Identification Bureau. The qualification for the post was a good memory.<sup>54</sup>

Provision for "curfew time" and the closing of the city gates at night<sup>55</sup> was made by passing of the Statute of Westminster. Great crowds often flocked to the city gates at the

last minute and the job of scrutinizing each person was a tremendous task. Men were hired to assist the bailiffs in this task. These men became known as "sergeants" which meant great scrutinizers. They were the forerunners of the present day sergeants.<sup>56</sup>

#### 2.3.2.4 The Period of Watch and Ward, the Bow Street Runners and Parochial and Commercial Police

In English towns, nightwatchmen were appointed to guard the gates, patrol the streets, and to protect life and property. They were called "the Watch", they were old men who could find no other work. In those days it was unsafe to walk in the streets and men went about armed to protect their own lives.<sup>57</sup>

The Watch and Ward was the brainchild of the Anglo Saxons and the germ of the modern police system.<sup>58</sup> The men employed under this system bawled out the condition of the weather, the hour, and the fact that all was well.<sup>59</sup> The Watch was the night guard and the Ward kept guard in the day. Citizens over 16 years of age could be called up by the tithingman to serve as Watch or Ward.<sup>60</sup>

The period 1500-1800 saw the land owners of England engaged in sheep rearing. The poor were ousted from their land which caused great hordes of them to wander aimlessly around the countryside or flock to the already crowded cities. There was a social upheaval, crimes increased sharply and bailiffs found it difficult to keep order.

Commercial and parochial police forces were established. These forces were concerned mainly with the protection of stores and shops. In their patrol methods they established a pattern which is still being followed by modern policemen.<sup>61</sup> Watching and Warding was delegated to nominated citizens. This development signified the beginning of a police system adapted to meet specific social problems.<sup>62</sup>

To the Englishmen of the 18th century the word "police" was synonymous with arrest without trial, spying, ill treatment or any forms of unpleasantness. The word "police" was first used in an official sense in the Parliament Act of 1787 which provided for a

constabulary system in Ireland.<sup>63</sup>

#### 2.3.2.5 The Work of Henry Fielding

At about the commencement of the Industrial Revolution the number of crimes and disorders increased and the Gordon Riots broke out in 1780. London was ruled for six days by a mob. The first attempt at reform was made by Henry Fielding. He mustered a little force of volunteers to keep the streets of London safe.<sup>64</sup>

Victims of crimes were asked to report the matter to him at his house in Bow Street, giving details of crimes and descriptions of offenders. Runners were used to investigate the reported crimes.<sup>65</sup>

The Bow Street Runners were organised along three basic lines namely : (a) foot patrol in the city;<sup>66</sup> (b) horse patrol to escort travellers safely for 20 miles, to and from London;<sup>67</sup> and (c) detectives.

Fielding's aim was to prevent crime and arrests of criminals.<sup>68</sup> P. Colquhoun<sup>69</sup> supports this contention and adds that the establishment of

a police force was aimed at protecting the public and for the suppression and prevention of crime.

The first uniformed policemen appeared in London in 1805. These men belonged to the Horse Patrol establishment. They wore blue double breasted coats with yellow metal buttons, scarlet waist coats, blue trousers, Wellington boots and white leather gloves.<sup>70</sup> They were popularly known as "Redbreasts" from the scarlet waist coats they wore.<sup>71</sup>

Henry Fielding will long be remembered for two main reasons : firstly, for the establishment of special courts to hear police cases daily. His aim in doing this was to avoid men languishing in jails while they awaited trial for petty crimes. Secondly, for the circulation of crime news. By circularizing crime news Henry Fielding obtained more co-operation from the public, and at the same time it helped to discourage the vicious rewards and incentives which were then in vogue.<sup>72</sup>

#### 2.3.2.6. The Work of Sir Robert Peel

In 1825 there was a severe economic depression in England. There was a lack of jails, wages were reduced, people suffered hunger and they lived in utter misery. These conditions led to social unrest and disorder.<sup>73</sup>

In 1829 conditions in London left much to be desired and Parliament was forced to act. Sir Robert Peel, the Home Secretary, was inspired to create a modern police force. He introduced a bill to set up a regular, paid police force in London.<sup>74</sup> The famous Metropolitan Police Act was passed in 1829<sup>75</sup> and on the 29 September 1829 the first batch of Metropolitan policemen went out on the streets of London.<sup>76</sup>

The public were generally hostile to these policemen. They were called "Peelers", "Lobsters"<sup>77</sup> or "Bobbies" after their founder.<sup>78</sup> At the outset the policemen, were sneered at, insulted and assaulted as they patrolled the streets. They were called "Peel's Bloody Gang", "the Raw Lobsters" and obscene nicknames.<sup>79</sup>

In the 1820's Sir Robert Peel enunciated various principles of law enforcement.<sup>80</sup>

These principles were as follows:

- 2.3.2.6.1 "The police must be stable, efficient and organised along military lines.
- 2.3.2.6.2 The police must be under government control.
- 2.3.2.6.3 The absence of crime will best prove the efficiency of the police.
- 2.3.2.6.4 The distribution of crime news is essential.
- 2.3.2.6.5 The development of police strength, both by time and area, is essential.
- 2.3.2.6.6 No quality is more indispensable to a policemen than a perfect command of temper. A quiet determined manner has more effect than violent action.
- 2.3.2.6.7 Good appearance commands respect.
- 2.3.2.6.8 The selection and training of proper persons are the root of efficient law enforcement.
- 2.3.2.6.9 Public security demands that every police officer be given an identifying number.

- 2.3.2.6.10 Police headquarters should be centrally located and easily accessible to the people.
- 2.3.2.6.11 Policemen should be hired on a probationary basis before permanent assignment.
- 2.3.2.6.12 Police crime records are necessary to the best distribution of police strength."

It was only through courteous but firm enforcement of the law, that the Metropolitan Police gradually won the respect of the people. This is the grand tradition that present day policemen have inherited. The most important significance of the Metropolitan Police is to be found in its example to the world. It serves and has served as a model for future national police reform, legislation and organization.<sup>81</sup>

#### 2.4 South Africa

The philosophy of policing in South Africa is discussed against the background of the development of the English police system. It must be mentioned that the South African Police is the product of the historic

influence of the British and the Dutch. In the following discussion it would be seen how the Dutch settlers influenced the early organisation of the police force. Later, when the British arrived at the Cape the organization of the South African Police Force was influenced considerably by the British in scope, composition and functions. In spite of these influences the South African Police developed an individuality of its own which differed from that of the British police. This difference manifests itself in the highly centralised nature of the South African Police in contrast to the decentralisation of the British police which functions municipally.

#### 2.4.1 Early Development

Cape Town was the birth place of the first policeman. The first European settlement was set up in the Cape of Good Hope in 1652. The Bantus and Hottentots were very primitive and "policing" was unknown to them. Those who committed offences were dealt with by their chiefs.<sup>82</sup> When Jan van Riebeeck

arrived at the Cape he formed a small garrison under his command. He delegated certain soldiery powers known as "gewel=  
diger" to enforce his instructions strictly and without hesitation.<sup>83</sup>

In 1657 the first law enforcement officer was appointed. He was called the Fiscal. Initially, his duties included the collection of taxes and tolls from Dutch land owners. The large number of legislations passed at that time were constantly broken by the inhabitants. As a result the Fiscal was authorised to enforce those legislations.

The inhabitants suffered numerous cattle thefts. The Fiscal was unable to keep adequate control over the number of thefts so he requested for additional recruits to assist him. Their duties were inter alia, patrolling the outlying areas, guarding houses by night, reporting fires on mountains, detecting thieves, stamping out illegal bartering with natives, inspecting taverns and keeping the peace. The Fiscal and his men induced terror in the minds of

the inhabitants as they charged far and wide.<sup>84</sup>

The first real Watch was established in the Cape on 3rd July, 1686. It consisted of 10 Free Burghers and they served under a sergeant and a corporal. They were known as Preventive Police. Their duties were preventive and included, the patrolling of streets. They were armed with cutlasses and swords, but after a few inhabitants were hacked, these weapons were withdrawn from them.<sup>85</sup>

By 1764 a Watch House "Wachthuis" was built in Greenmarket Square, Cape Town. This building can still be seen at the corner of Burg and Longmarket Streets.<sup>86</sup> The Watchmen were inspected by their Commandant before setting out on their nightly patrols. The guns of the Watch were kept in the Watch House. These weapons were only used in emergencies. Muskets were never carried on duty.<sup>87</sup>

The Watch patrolled in pairs and carried rattles to warn evildoers of their approach.

When the Watchmen were informed of an evil design or disturbance, they would immediately spring their rattles and loudly call out "murder", "thieves" or the like.<sup>88</sup> James Cramer<sup>89</sup> points out that they were instructed to raise a "hue and cry" if a serious offence was committed, to shout out the time, and to call out the weather conditions as they patrolled the streets.

If a Watchman neglected his duty he was punished by domestic correction and confined to a diet of bread and water. These Watchmen were selected from the most sober and stout inhabitants and were paid from the funds of the burgher treasury. A sum of £67.10s. 0d per annum was paid to the first and second commandant while the ordinary Watchman received his salary on a sliding scale ranging from £7.10s.0d to £37.10.0d per annum.<sup>90</sup>

As the settlement in the Cape grew another body of policemen developed. They were called the "Dienaars" and were a body of Corrective Police numbering twenty constables

and a clerk. A Commissioner and Deputy Superintendent were appointed. These men used the granary of the Burgher Senate as a police station which today is the Caledon Street Post Office. These constables were a mixed "bag" of men. They were made up of discharged English and Dutch soldiers and a few Malays. They carried swords and cutlasses. Their immediate Commanding Officer (a non-commissioned officer of today) was called an under-Sheriff and was given a painted stave as a badge of rank. He was duty bound to produce this symbol of office whenever his authority was questioned. He was armed with a flintlock pistol.<sup>91</sup>

The "Dienaars" patrolled the streets from gunfire to 9 at night when the nightwatch took over. The duties of these men were to apprehend deserters from ships and the armed forces.<sup>92</sup>

When the British arrived at the Cape in 1795<sup>93</sup> they established a military government. The Watchmen and "Dienaars" were all taken intact by the new administration.

The Fiscal's office now became purely administrative. The administration of goals and the police now fell into the hands of the Commissioner, W.C. Ryneveld.<sup>94</sup>

By 1795 the Cape of Good Hope comprised of four districts namely, Cape, Stellenbosch, Swellendam and Graaff-Reinet. Collectively, these areas had a population of at least 15 000 European inhabitants. Each district was in turn divided into veld or field cornetcies.<sup>95</sup>

Veldcornets were appointed to each district. Whenever it was necessary for a punitive expedition to be called out and when law and order was to be maintained, the Landdrost would send messages to the different veldcornets under his command who in turn would summon the Burghers in their respective districts to gather together at an appointed place. In this way a Commando was formed.<sup>96</sup>

The veldcornets received one third of the fines which were levied against an accused person; they were exempted from taxes and received a piece of ground on loan usually

adjoining their own.

The appointment of a veld cornet was made by the Governor General on the recommendation of the Landdrost. They had to be respectable persons above the age of 25 years and owners of freeholders or leasehold ground in the district in which they served.<sup>97</sup>

#### 2.4.2 The Cape Regiment

From 1806 onwards law and order was extended to the outlying areas of the Cape countryside. The Cape Regiment was a semi-military police force formed in 1806 by Major John Graham. This regiment patrolled the outlying areas of the Cape countryside. The Rank and file were recruited from the Cape Coloureds while non-Commissioned officers and Officers were Europeans. They had a difficult time to instil the rudiments of discipline into the rank and file of the regiment. They were constantly deserting the regiment, getting drunk, fighting amongst themselves or losing their equipment. This force fulfilled a desperate need, but as an experiment it

failed, so it was reorganised and only Europeans were accepted as recruits. In 1827 it was renamed the Cape Mounted Riflemen.<sup>98</sup>

#### 2.4.3 The Imperial Cape Mounted Riflemen Corps

The Imperial Cape Mounted Riflemen Corps were issued with the India pattern musket with hand rail stock and 39 inch barrel. The duty of this corps was to patrol the frontier districts.<sup>99</sup>

#### 2.4.4 The Cape Police

The Cape Police was established in 1882. It was divided into three divisions namely, King William's Town in the eastern province where it had its headquarters, Kimberley and Cape Town. They performed the usual police duties. This police force was disbanded in 1904, and was incorporated into a new force namely, the Cape Mounted Police.<sup>100</sup> A number of rural police forces were established but were handicapped because of small numbers. The various small forces subsequently merged into one large composite

force under one commandant. The result was the formation of the Frontier Armed and Mounted Police.

The Frontier Armed and Mounted Police maintained law and order in the unsettled border areas and assisted in the creation of an orderly administration in the Transkei. Because of the prevailing circumstances the activities of the corps was largely military. In 1878 its military character was recognised by the government and under Act No. 9 of 1878, the Frontier Armed and Mounted Police was transformed into the Cape Mounted Riflemen which made them the "Permanent Colonial Force both for policing and defence."<sup>101</sup> They remained as such until they merged into the wider organisation of the Union.

#### 2.4.5 Other Police Forces

Before Union a number of minor police forces were established for specific purposes. When the desired purposes were served they disbanded. These minor police forces were: Griqualand Border Police formed in 1881,

Stutterheim Mounted Police which served in the ninth Kaffir War. The District Rural Police Force which served the eastern coast of South Africa, Transkei Police Force and Umtata Police Force.<sup>102</sup>

#### 2.4.6 The Transvaal Police

The Volunteer and Member Police Force of the Republic was better known as Z.A.R.P. or Zuid Afrikaansche Republiekeinse Politie. It was established in 1895 but had been in existence since 1881.

Wolmarans was the first Commissioner of Police in the Transvaal Republic. He had to maintain law and order with a small force which was partly accoutred. In 1895 he took over the policing of the Swaziland border districts.

During the Jameson Raid the number of policemen increased. D.E. Shutte was appointed Commissioner of Police. By 1897 he divided the Transvaal into five police divisions.

Lawlessness was a daily occurrence on the Rand and the police was not able to cope

with the wild characters who were attracted by the gold rush. Those who joined the police force were rustics from the country districts with no qualifications and they had the idea that a policeman's duty was confined to pushing Africans off sidewalks.<sup>103</sup>

Because of increased lawlessness the force became absolutely demoralized. Misconduct among members of the police force (ZARP) was also on the increase therefore a clean up of the forces became necessary.

The State Attorney of the Republic, J.C. Smuts reorganised the police force. He dismissed the head of the Civil Investigation Department in Johannesburg and transferred the control of the detective department to the State Attorney's office. In this way he had complete control over the police force.

#### 2.4.7 Orange Free State

A police force was established in 1862 and recruits were enrolled from the ranks of the burghers in the Republic. Their duties were similar to those of the Z.A.R.P.<sup>104</sup>

#### 2.4.8 Natal

The first police force in Natal was formed in 1846, and was superseded in 1861 by the Natal Mounted Police. This was again recognized in 1874, and took part in the Zulu War of 1879 as the Natal Police.

Zululand had its own police force. It was known as the Zululand Mounted Police and was absorbed into the Natal Police in 1898. Pietermaritzburg and Durban in Natal were policed by their own Borough Police Forces, which were later absorbed into the South African Police.

#### 2.4.9 Police Forces after the Union of South Africa - 1910

Although the different colonial police forces and the various urban police forces continued to exist with the establishment of the Union on 31 May 1910, the Union Government of that time had plans and ideas of establishing a national police force for the country. At a conference of the various Commissioners of Police a draft Police Bill based more or less on the Transvaal Police Act No. 5 of 1908

and Police Regulations was drawn up for the Union of South Africa for consideration during the Parliamentary session of 1911. On the 15 October 1910 the then Commissioner of the Transvaal Police, Colonel T.G. Truter (later Sir Theodore Truter) was appointed by the Government as the Chief Commissioner for all the existing police forces.

An interesting fact which is not generally known is that during this period it was decided at the outset to establish two forces, namely, the South African Police and the South African Mounted Riflemen (S.A.M.R.) previously known as the C.M.R. to provide police protection in the Union of South Africa.

The former was to have been a police force proper in terms of a Police Act, but the members would still have been subject to active service in terms of the Defence Act. The latter was to have been a purely military force in terms of the Defence Act and during times of peace was to have been used exclusively for police service especially in those parts of the country fairly densely populated by the Bantu.

The South African Mounted Riflemen, consisted of 5 Regiments constituted as follows:-

- 2.4.9.1 First Regiment, with headquarters in Umtata, consisted of members of the "Cape Mounted Riflemen", for the Transkei area;
- 2.4.9.2 The Second and Third Regiments, with headquarters in Pietermaritzburg and Dundee respectively consisting of members of the Natal Police for the whole of the Province of Natal except Durban and Pietermaritzburg.
- 2.4.9.3 The Fourth Regiment, with headquarters in Pretoria consisted of those members of the Transvaal Police who were stationed in the Wartberg, Zouthpansberg, Marico, Rustenburg, Lydenburg and Barberton Districts.
- 2.4.9.4 The Fifth Regiment, with headquarters in Kimberley, consisted of those members of the "Cape Mounted Police" stationed in Griqualand West, Gordonias, Bechuanaland and Namaqualand.

All the remaining members of the pre-Union Police Forces (with the exception of the

Borough Police of Durban and Pietermaritzburg) who were not taken up by the South African Mounted Riflemen, were allotted for assimilation in the South African Police, only if they accepted the new service conditions in writing.

The Defence Act No. 13 of 1912 and the Police Act No. 14 of 1912 were accepted by Parliament. Section 2 of the Police Act provided that, inter alia: "...there shall be established, as from a date to be fixed by the Governor-General by proclamation in the Gazette, not being earlier than the thirty first day of January, 1913, a police force entitled the South African Police..."

By Proclamation No. 18 of 1913, the 1 April 1913, was stipulated as the date for the establishment of the South African Police Force. The proclamation was signed on the 30 January 1913, by Lord Gladstone as Governor-General and Mr J.W. Sauer, Minister of Justice.<sup>106</sup>

### Conclusion

The relationship of the individual to society is one of dependence. In exchange for the personal safety provided by society the individual must be motivated to accept his dependence on laws regulating behaviour. In this respect society has an enforcement function. Because one's willingness to accept control of behaviour varies considerably the enforcement function of society becomes necessary to ensure its survival.

Policing includes inter alia, the preservation of sound social relationships and the maintenance of order. The true philosophy of policing is not a negative one of suppression and punishment, but one of help and assistance to all. The social welfare character of the police service is not a new concept, and many police tasks have social rather than specifically criminal significance.

The modern police force has developed from an inferior social service to one of the first and most important bastions of the country's defence and security services.

In the following chapter the principles, on which most police organisations are established to achieve their objectives, are discussed.

REFERENCES

1. Bunyard, R.S. : Police : Organisation and Command, Macdonald and Evans, Ltd., Plymouth, 1978, p. 35.
2. Ibid., p. 1.
3. Berkley, E.G. : Introduction to the Criminal Justice System, Holbrook Press Inc. Boston, 1972, p. 199.
4. Jacobs, W.D. : Modern Government, D. van and Zink, H. Nostrand Co., Inc., Princeton, New Jersey, 1966, p. 21.
5. Sullivan, J.L. : Introduction to Police Science, McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1971, p. 175.
6. Ibid., p. 175.
7. Ibid., p. 175.

8. Ibid., p. 175.
9. Berkley, E.G. : Op. cit., p. 199.  
et al.
10. Sullivan, J.L. : Introduction to Police Science, p. 1.
11. Ibid., p. 1
12. Van Heerden, T.J. : Introduction to Police Science, University of South Africa, Pretoria, 1976, p. 49.
13. Radelet, L.A. : The Police and the Community, Glencoe Press, Beverley Hills, 1973, p. 38 as quoted by Van Heerden, T.J. in Introduction to Police Science, p. 47.
14. Van Heerden, T.J. : op cit., p. 49.
15. Van Heerden, T.J. : op. cit., p. 50.

16. Wilson, O.W. : Police Administration, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1963, p. 207.
17. Johnson, E. : "Police : An Analysis of Role Conflict", Jan - Feb., 1970, pp. 47 - 52 as quoted in Shanahan, D.T. The Administration of the Justice System, pp. 199 - 200.
18. Johnson, E. : op. cit., pp. 199 - 200.
19. Ibid., p. 199 - 200.
20. Clift, R.E. : A Guide to Modern Police Thinking, the W.H. Anderson Company, Cincinnati, 1970, p. 1.
21. Ibid., p. 1.
22. Adams, T.F. : Law Enforcement : An Introduction to the Police Role in the Community, Prentice-Hall Inc. New Jersey, 1968, p. 66.

23. Cramer, J. : The World's Police, Cassel and Co., Ltd., London, 1964, p. 3.
24. Sullivan, J.L. : Introduction to Police Science, McGraw-Hill Book Company, U.S.A., 1966, p. 123.
25. Van Onselen, L. : A Rhapsody in Blue, Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1960, p. 1.
26. Eldefonso, E. : Police and the Criminal Law, Goodyear Publishing Co., Inc., California, 1972, p. 21.  
Coffey, A.R. and  
Sullivan, J.
27. Van Onselen, L. : op. cit., p. 21.
28. Adams, T.F. : op. cit., p. 37.
29. Ibid., p. 32.
30. Eldefonso, E. : op. cit., p. 22.  
Coffey, A.R. and  
Sullivan, J.

31. Harrison, R. : The Story of the World's Police, Phoenix House Ltd., London, 1954, p. 12.
32. Seagle, E. : The History of Law, Tudor Publishing Co., 1941, pp. 104 - 22.
- Eldefonso, E. : Police and the Criminal  
Coffey, A.R. and Law, p. 22.  
Sullivan, J.
33. Cramer, J. : op. cit., p. 4.
34. Ibid., pp. 104 - 22.
35. Ibid., pp. 4 - 5.
36. Ibid., p. 5.
37. Ibid., p. 6.
38. Ibid., pp. 6 - 7.
39. Cramer, J. : op. cit., p. 9.
40. Bodenheimer, E. : Jurisprudence : The Philosophy and Method

- of the Law, Harvard University Press, Massachusetts, 1962, p. 161.
41. Leonard, V.A. : The Police of the 20th Century, The Foundation Press, New York, 1964, pp. 1 - 2.
42. Sullivan, J.L. : op. cit., p. 3.
43. Clift, R.E. : op. cit., p. 2.  
Harrison, R. : op. cit., p. 12.
44. O'Connor, D. : "The Modern Approach to the Police Function."  
The Australian and New Zealand Journal of Criminology, Vol. 7., No. 2., June, 1974, p. 72.
45. Sullivan, J.L. : op. cit., p. 3.
46. Cramer, J. : op. cit., p. 14.
47. Sullivan, J.L. : op. cit., p. 3.

48. Allan, C.K. : The Queen's Peace,  
Stevens and Sons, Ltd.,  
London, 1953, pp. 72 - 3.
49. Clift, R.E. : op. cit., p. 2.
50. Sullivan, J.L. : op. cit., p. 4.
51. Clift, R.E. : op. cit., p. 3.
52. O'Connor, D. : op. cit., p. 72.
53. Clift, R.E. : op. cit., p. 3.
54. Ibid., p. 6.
55. Ibid., p. 7.
- Harrison, R. : op. cit., pp. 12 - 13.
56. Sullivan, J.L. : op. cit., p. 6.
57. Harrison, R. : op. cit., pp. 12 - 13.
58. Sullivan, J.L. : op. cit., p. 4.
59. Hutchinson, R.H. : "The Lesson of Scotland  
Yard", Harpers, 1936.  
Vol. 173, p. 320, quoted  
by Tappan, P.W. : Crime

- Justice and Correction,  
McGraw-Hill Book Company,  
Inc., U.S.A., 1960, p. 273.
60. Sullivan, J.L. : op. cit., pp. 4 - 5.
61. Clift, R.E. : op. cit., p. 9.
62. O'Connor, D. : op. cit., p. 72.
63. Harrison, R. : op. cit., p. 17.
64. Cramer, J. : op. cit., p. 18.
65. Knudten, R.D. : Crime in a Complex Society,  
The Dorsey Press, Illinois,  
1970, Chapter 15.
66. Harrison, R. : op. cit., p. 14.  
Clift, R.E. : op. cit., p. 10.
67. Ibid., p. 10.
68. Harrison, R. : op. cit., p. 14.
69. Colquhoun, P. : A Treatise on the Police  
of the Metropolis,  
Patterson Smith, New

Jersey, 1969, p. 503.

70. Cramer, J. : op. cit., p. 18.
71. Harrison, R. : op. cit., p. 14.
72. Clift, R.E. : op. cit., p. 10.
73. Leonard, V.A. : op. cit., p. 2.
74. Harrison, R. : op. cit., p. 15.
75. Tappan, P.W. : op. cit., p. 274.
76. Tobias, J.J. : Nineteenth-Century Crime: Prevention and Punishment, David and Charles, Ltd., Newton Abbot, 1972, p. 113.
77. Tappan, P.W. : op. cit., p. 274.
78. Harrison, R. : op. cit., p. 16.
79. Cramer, J. : op. cit., p. 19.
80. Davis, E.M. : "Professional Police Principles", Abstracts on Police Science, Vol. 1, 1973.

81. Sullivan, J.L. : op. cit., pp. 11 - 12.
82. Cramer, J. : op. cit., p. 373.
83. Van Onselen, L. : op. cit. p. 8.
84. Ibid., p. 10.  
Cramer, J. : op. cit., p. 373.
85. Ibid., p. 373.
86. Annual Report of the Commissioner of Police  
for the year ending 1965  
Cooper, F.W. : "The Golden Jubilee of the  
South African Police",  
Justitia, April, 1963, p. 14.
87. Van Onselen, L. : op. cit., p. 10.
88. Jenkins, O. : "From Rattlewatch to Batons",  
Nongqai, August, 1938,  
p. 792.  
Van Onselen, L. : op. cit., p. 11.
89. Cramer, J. : op. cit., p. 374.
90. Van Onselen, L. : op. cit., p. 11.
91. Ibid., p. 12.

92. Ibid., p. 12.
93. Cramer, J. : op. cit., p. 374.
94. Van Onselen, L. : op. cit., p. 12.
95. Green, L.P. : History of Local Government in South Africa,  
Juta and Company, Ltd.,  
1957, p. 4.
96. Van Onselen, L. : op. cit., pp. 12 - 14.
97. Ibid., p. 15.
98. Ibid., p. 15.
99. Ibid., p. 16.
100. Ibid., p. 16.
101. Official Year Book of the Union, No. 4 of 1921.  
p. 390.
102. Van Onselen, L. ; op. cit., p. 22.
103. Ibid., pp. 22 - 25.
104. Ibid., p. 25.

105. Information obtained from the S.A.P. head=quarters in Pretoria.
106. Ibid.

### C H A P T E R 3

#### THE GENERAL AIMS AND FUNCTIONS OF POLICE ORGANISATIONS

#### 3. Organisation and Administration

##### 3.1 Introduction

The general aims and functions of police organisations are discussed in broad terms in this chapter. The idea is to give the reader an indication of how most police organisations function and then to show how the South African Police force fulfils the principles of organisation and administration as discussed in Chapter 5 of this thesis.

To fulfil this aim the discussion includes three main parts namely, the nature of organisations, administration as an integral part of all police organisations and the police force as a quasi-military organisation.

Organisations are social units, characterized by goals, division of labour, rules and the presence of one or more authority centres. Management is action. It is meant to achieve rational co-operation in an organisation.

Administration involves both organisation and management.

The three main characteristics of a police organisation are as follows: Firstly, one segment provides police service through patrol, investigation, vice control, and other activities. Secondly, there are operational services which have to be supported by the provision of supplies, maintenance of equipment and other internal activities, sustaining the field divisions. Thirdly, there must be planning, organizing and command-control. The organization must also be staffed, have buildings, equipment and supplies. These are administrative services.<sup>1</sup>

### 3.2 The Nature of Organisations

#### 3.2.1 Definition

An organisation evolves when two or more people unite to achieve a common goal. It is the individual who is at the centre of all the activity and he plays an important role in its functioning. There is in fact a combination of human beings, having defined duties

and responsibilities.<sup>2</sup> These individuals are brought together to accomplish some desired object. In the course of this co-operative activity they develop a complex pattern of relationships.

As a system, an organization has certain characteristics namely: an established structure including conscious planning in which people work and deal with one another in a co-ordinated and co-operative manner for the accomplishment of recognised goals; and many interdependent constituent parts, and subsystems within the whole system.<sup>3</sup>

An organization can thus be defined as a structure whose members plan consciously (i.e. rational and directed according to choice), have designated roles and work in a co-ordinated, co-operative and purposeful manner in accomplishing their common aims.

### 3.2.2 Principles of Organisation

The basic principles of organisation<sup>4</sup> can be enumerated as follows :

#### 3.2.2.1 Tasks which are similar or related in purpose,

process, method or clientele should be grouped together as one or more units under the control of one person. These tasks may be divided according to time, place and level of authority needed in their accomplishment.

- 3.2.2.2 When departmental capability is significantly increased then specialised units should be created at the expense of reduced control and decreased general interest.
- 3.2.2.3 Lines of demarcation should be drawn showing the responsibilities of each unit. This should be made known to all members of the organisation. In this way duplication in the execution of duties and neglect resulting from the non-assignment of a duty can be avoided.
- 3.2.2.4 Channels of communication should be established through which information could flow up or down and through which authority is delegated. Lines of control must be clearly defined and well understood by all members so that each may know to whom he is responsible and who in turn is responsible to him.
- 3.2.2.5 The structure and terminology should facilitate

the understanding of the purposes and responsibilities of the organization by all its members.

- 3.2.2.6 Individuals, units and situations should be under the immediate control of one person. In this way the principle of unity of command can be achieved. This would avoid friction which may result from duplication of direction and supervision.
- 3.2.2.7 The span of control of a supervisor should be large enough to provide economical supervision. The supervisor should have no more units or persons than he can manage.
- 3.2.2.8 Each and every task should be made the duty of someone on the staff. The responsibility of planning, execution and control should be given to designated personnel.
- 3.2.2.9 There must be supervision provided for every member of the organisation, every function or activity.
- 3.2.2.10 Each duty should carry with it commensurate authority to fulfil the responsibility.

3.2.2.11 Those who delegated authority must be held accountable for the use made of it and for failure to use it.

### 3.2.3 The Characteristics of a Police Organisation

As indicated above an organisation is structured in terms of its objectives. This is particularly true of a police force which has five clearly defined objectives:<sup>5</sup>

3.2.3.1 The prevention of crime and delinquency. This is achieved by modifying conditions which produce them instilling respect for law and order, co-operating with other agencies and promoting public welfare.

3.2.3.2 The repression of crime and delinquency may be attained by regular patrols, inspecting premises and being informed of affairs in the area of their jurisdiction.

3.2.3.3 Another important objective is the apprehension and identification of offenders and the collection of evidence against those charged with crimes.

3.2.3.4 The recovery of stolen property reduces the

cost of crime and helps to restrain those who might benefit from the gains of crime.

3.2.3.5 The regulation of people in their non-criminal activities.

To accomplish these objectives, the police have developed a highly structured organisation. The most important characteristics of this organisation will be discussed below.

3.2.4 The Nature of Police Organisation

The organisational plan of a police department is a pyramid - like structure. At the bottom of the pyramid are the functional units composed of people whose duties are similar and who work together as a team. The smaller units are grouped together into divisions and are placed under the leadership of sergeants or persons of higher rank who are the field or working leaders. One or more of these units are grouped together into larger units and are under the leadership of the next higher person on the pyramid, for example the warrant officer to the captain. In smaller units the captain may be directly responsible to the district

commandant, district commandants are responsible to divisional commissioners and divisional commissioners are in turn responsible to the Commissioner of Police.

The functional implementation of this structure is inter alia, accomplished by the way the police force operates.

### 3.2.5 Types of Police Organisations

Generally there are three ways in which the police organise their men for the service they perform namely: by line functions, by staff functions and by both line-staff functions. These are important types of organisations which are seen blending in a well organised police department.

#### 3.2.5.1 Line Organisation

In their efforts to protect citizens from suffering, fear and property loss produced by crime and the threat thereof, the policeman occupies the front line.<sup>6</sup> The line officer is one who carries out his duties in the field, performing the basic police functions namely, protecting life and property and preserving

the public peace.<sup>7</sup> These include inter alia, the patrol, traffic, detective, vice and juvenile divisions - they deliver police services. It was essentially for these tasks that the police department was created. This is a primary service which the police render to the public.<sup>8</sup>

#### 3.2.5.2 Staff Organisation

In a staff organisation the personnel render services to the line officers. Staff officers supervise services such as planning, preparation, co-ordination and supplying the line officer with needed equipment, services and information.<sup>9</sup> It is the staff organisation which provides the line with trained personnel, communication facilities, police cars, crime laboratories and other services so that it (the line) will be able to function effectively in carrying out its duties and responsibilities.<sup>10</sup>

#### 3.2.5.3 The Line-staff Organisation

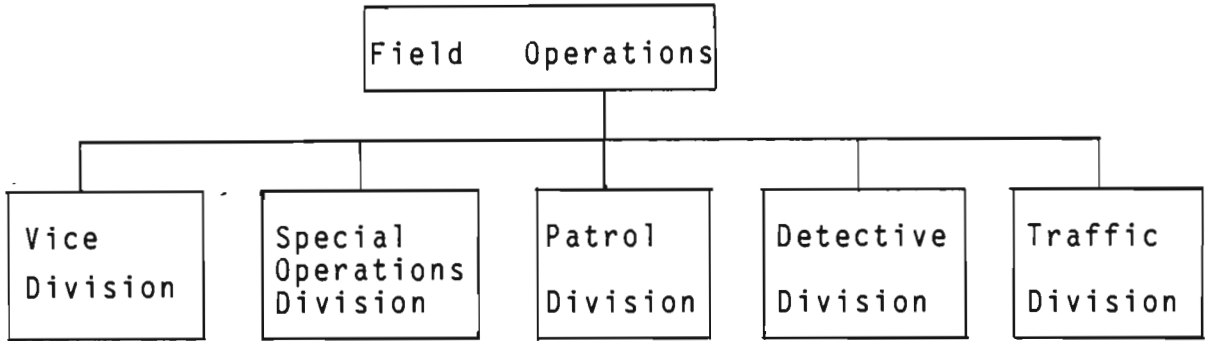
The line-staff organisation has personnel who function in a dual or line-staff capacity. When sergeants or lieutenant work in the field, they are line officers and when they

perform duty in a supervisory capacity they are staff officers.<sup>11</sup>

### 3.2.6 The Grouping of Similar Tasks

#### 3.2.6.1 Organisation by Function

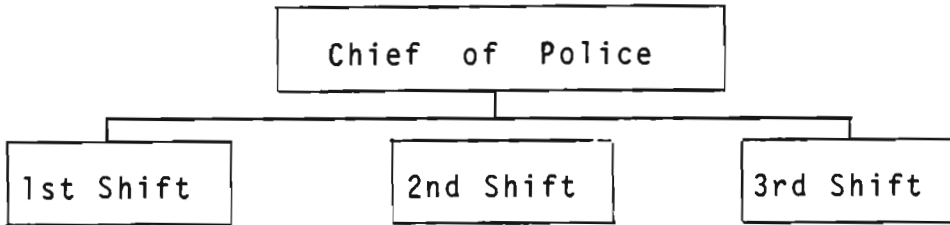
Tasks may be grouped if they are similar or related in function, process, method or clientele, or if there is a need to group them by time of day, place of execution or level of authority. The grouping of tasks should be logical and consistent. Referring to the police force O.W. Wilson and R.C. McLaren<sup>12</sup> say that it should be organised primarily according to the tasks performed that is, it should be divided into groups so that similar tasks and related duties may be assigned to each. Organisation by function means that most members will be given patrol duties, some traffic control while others investigations, etcetera. These divisions include all the field services.

DIAGRAM A : ORGANISATION BY FUNCTION

### 3.2.6.2 Organisation by Time

In some instances units are divided into shifts or watches according to the time of the day. The tour of duty is called a watch or shift. To determine the time limits of watches, there must be a study to show the frequency of calls for service of time. The most common system of a watch organisation is that of three, eight hour shifts namely 8 a.m. to 4p.m., 4p.m. to midnight, and midnight to 8a.m.<sup>113</sup> This principle is illustrated in the following diagram.

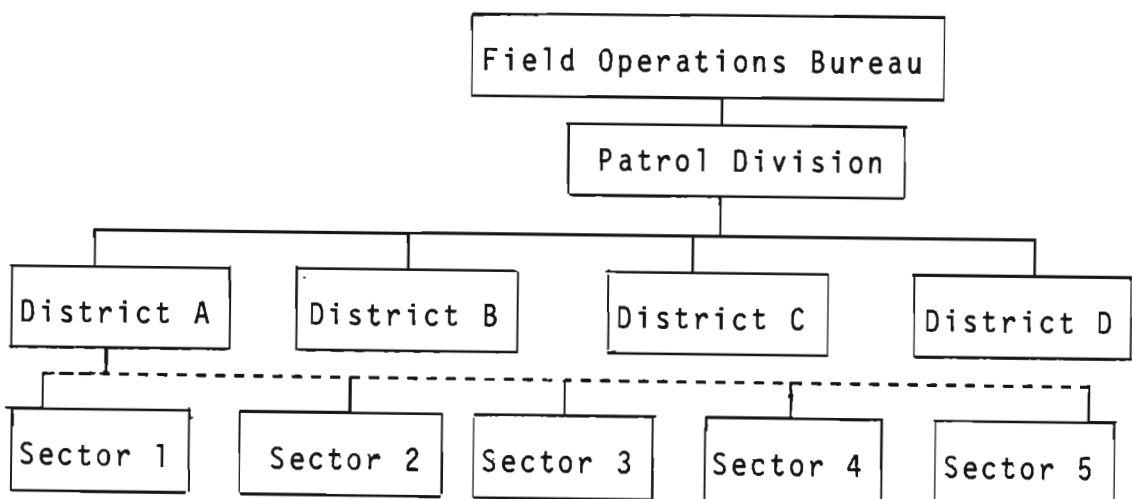
DIAGRAM B : ORGANISATION BY TIME<sup>14</sup>



3.2.6.3 Organisation by Place

In this organisation there is a territorial distribution of a platoon. Patrol men are assigned to beats. The territorial distribution of a platoon is shown by broken lines in the following diagram :

DIAGRAM C : ORGANISATION BY PLACE<sup>15</sup>



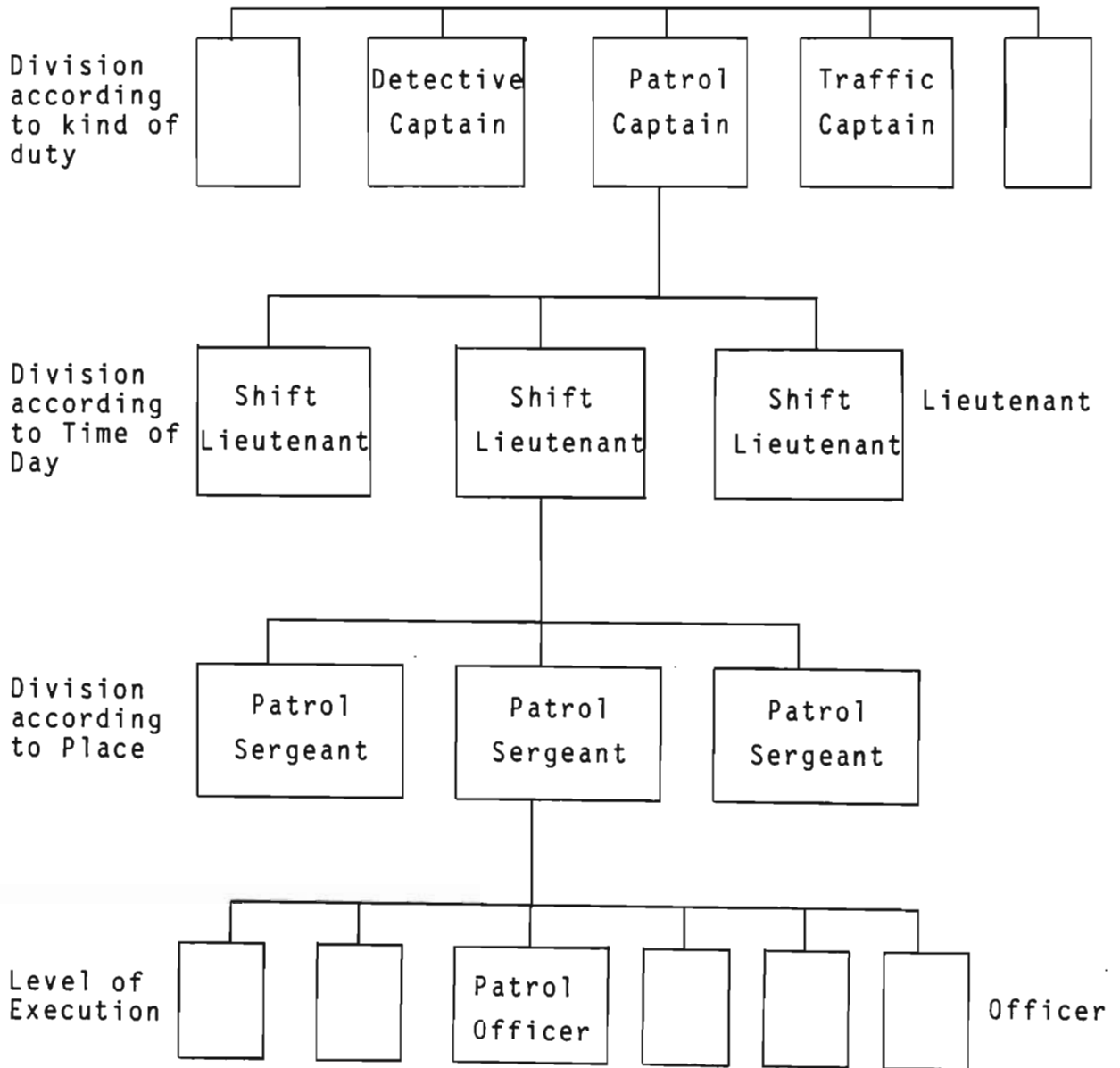
Patrol men on street duty are under the supervision of a patrol sergeant. If there is a large number of patrolmen, they are divided into squads. A large city is divided into geographical districts and the patrol force divided among them.

#### 3.2.6.4 Organisation by Level of Authority

In police departments there are police sergeants, lieutenants, etcetera. O.W. Wilson and R.C. McLaren<sup>16</sup> illustrate the vertical combination of superior officers, each rank at a different level of authority from the other, form channels through which operations may be directed and controlled.

Tasks in most police organisations are grouped by function, time and place and also by level of authority as illustrated:

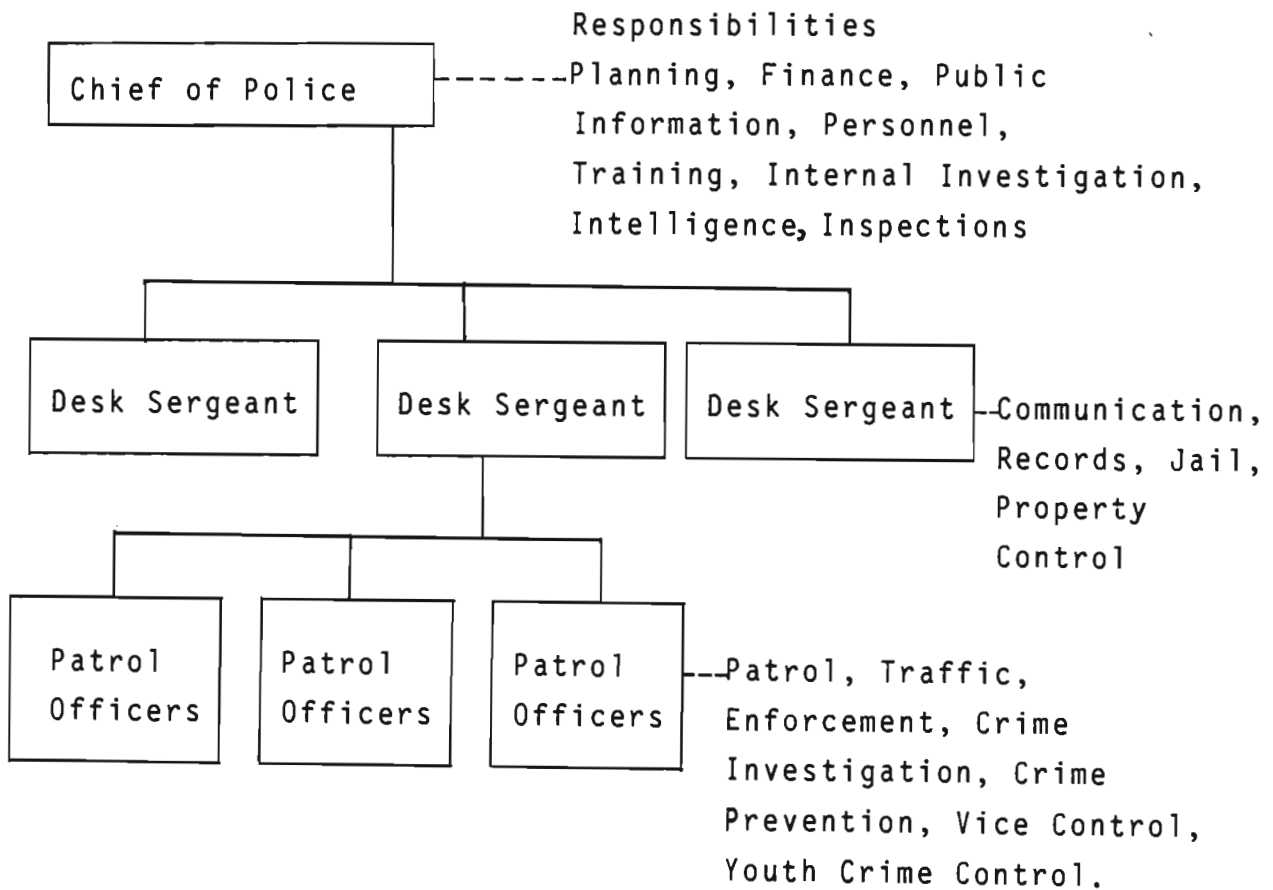
DIAGRAM D : ORGANISATION BY FUNCTION, TIME PLACE AND LEVEL OF AUTHORITY



3.2.7 Specialisation

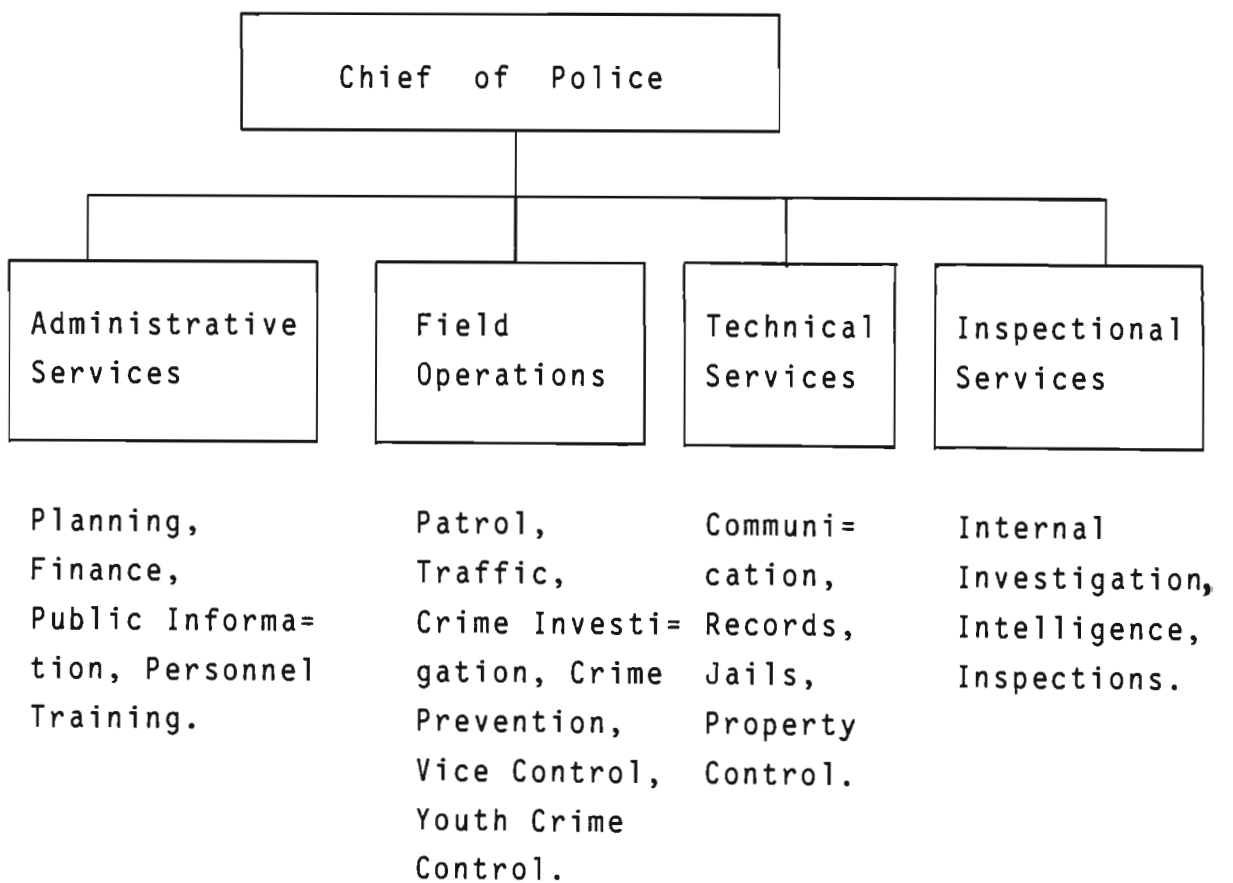
Owing to the variety of police activity carried out by police departments, even in the smallest departments there is a tendency towards specialisation. In a smaller police department the volume of work has to be shared among a small number of men.

DIAGRAM E : LESSER SPECIALISATION  
SMALLER DEPARTMENT



In a large police organisation where the volume of work is great and the number of men many, there is greater specialisation.

DIAGRAM F : GREATER SPECIALIZATION  
LARGER DEPARTMENT



### 3.2.8 Lines of Authority and Chain in Command

When a department is broken down into classifications by duties performed, a "chain of command" or "lines of authority" must develop. This is a necessary feature because misunderstanding can jeopardise the efficiency of the operation in the department. It also has its merits in the sense that a man would not be responsible to two supervisors at the same time.

A police organisation functions for 24 hours of the day, for seven days a week. It is for this reason that greater authority and responsibility is placed on those executives who operate the department when the Commissioner or Chief of Police is not on duty. This situation makes the lower echelons broader as far as "span of control" is concerned.<sup>17</sup>

### 3.2.9 Unity of Command

A subordinate police officer should accept the authority of only one supervisor in carrying out his duties and functions. This principle is known as the "Unity of Command".

It is strictly followed in a military organisation and implies that it is inadvisable for a member to receive instructions from more than one superior.<sup>18</sup>

In the police service it is important that one man be in complete command of each situation and that only one man be in direct command or supervision of each officer. It is unwise for a police executive or commander to appear at the scene of a crime on a routine basis unless he plans to take personal command. If he is present and does not act, his presence serves no purpose except to tempt his subordinates to refer the matter to him.<sup>19</sup>

### 3.2.10 Span of Control

A superior in an organisation is expected to exercise control over the activities of his subordinates. His main task is to see that everything is carried out or performed in accordance with the rules and instructions issued.<sup>20</sup>

Many executives attempt to exercise a span of control beyond their capacity, this results in

a loss of effective direction, co-ordination and control. There are two reasons why a police administrator could make this error, they are : an over estimation of his own ability and an inability or unwillingness to delegate authority because he may have a desire to exercise a close control over operations.<sup>21</sup>

### 3.2.11 Delegation of Authority

Any complex organisation has to work smoothly. It is for this reason that a higher official has to confer authority on lower officials to carry out certain duties and to make decisions. Delegation confers discretionary powers. The subordinate remains responsible to the superior for his acts. Authority belongs to the superior and he retains the power to hold the subordinate responsible for the authority that is delegated to him. Delegation simply implies that the subordinate is given authority to do a job and it is the duty of the superior to see that it is done properly. This transfer of power is revolvable and subject to modification and change at the will of the delegating officer.

The advantages of delegation are : conferring authority on subordinates which will ensure that a job is efficiently performed; it helps the superior to concentrate on more important policy matters; it gives the administrator more free time and releases him from minute detailed day to day routine matters and finally the subordinate develops a sense of responsibility.<sup>22</sup>

#### 3.2.12 Distribution of Responsibility

An organisation has its beginning in the formulation of an efficient organisational chart. An organisational chart is an inanimate object having a sterile quality, but it takes human direction and control to give an organisation life and to make it effective. A good administrator can make the organisational chart and its operation procedures an effective tool to achieve the objects of his department.<sup>23</sup>

#### 3.2.13 Work Load

It appears to be difficult to determine work loads in police work. As an example, the Investigation Department can sometimes take

a few hours to clear up a burglary case and yet in another case it may take a few weeks without even producing results. To determine the work load, it is necessary to make a study of past calls. In this respect planning and research is of value in determining trends and patterns.<sup>24</sup>

#### 3.2.14 Co-ordination

There must be co-ordination of human effort to ensure unity of action. Co-ordination can be achieved by direct communication and friendly rapport with the supervisors of the various units in the organisation.<sup>25</sup>

### 3.3 Administration

Administration is not a new concept. It is old as man himself. Just as civilisation advances and reaches higher levels, so administration has developed and advanced. Administration is an indispensable instrument in the regulation of the affairs of any community. It is therefore a concept which has advanced hand in hand with civilisation.

Administration and management are practically

synonymous<sup>26</sup> and they can be used interchangeably in police administration. Luther Gulick<sup>27</sup> defines administration as the planning, organising, staffing, directing, co-ordinating, reporting and budgeting of an organisation. Administration and management are fundamental in police work. T.J. van Heerden<sup>28</sup> supports this contention and states that it is the administrative design which determines the quality of service. Further, administration embraces support, auxiliary and technical services, personal management, internal investigations and inspections and all other responsibilities mentioned by Gulick. Police administration also includes public and official information and relations; the relationship of the police to the public; the relationship of the members of the police force to the family of officials especially to those at higher levels of authority and finally the information that must be provided to each one of them.<sup>29</sup>

Administration begins when an executive head has been appointed to prescribe over and implement a programme that is planned to achieve

the goals of that organisation.

### 3.3.1 The Bases of Administrative Organisation

There is always a method of dividing work among different people. C.P. Bhambhri<sup>30</sup> recognises four bases on which various administrative organisations are built. These are:

#### 3.3.1.1 Major Purpose of Function

An organisation may be established to perform particular functions to serve major purposes, for example in a police department to : maintain order, preserve life, protect property, prevent and repress crime, apprehend violators, assist in the prosecution of violators, etcetera.<sup>31</sup>

#### 3.3.1.2 Process or Profession

These are terms which refer to the technical skills required to perform specialised tasks like crime detection and criminal investigation.

#### 3.3.1.3 Clientele or Commodity

An organisation is created to deal with a body of persons served or a section of a community, so that the persons served become the basis of the organisation.

#### 3.3.1.4 Area or Territory

This refers to the place where the work is to be carried out that is, the area to be covered.

There may be two bases found in one organisation but it would be difficult to find out which factor or factors are the most important as the basis for the organisation.

#### 3.3.2 Line and Staff Personnel

R. Caldwell<sup>32</sup> mentions that good personnel is important to any organisation. In a police department it is a primary requisite. The staff concept has been borrowed from military administration. The staff is there to support the executive head with specialised information and advice. Further, it is concerned with planning, thinking and knowing functions. Line personnel concern themselves with the execution of duties. Their responsibility is to carry out their duties and issue commands.<sup>33</sup>

The chief executive needs assistance in his multifarious duties for example, expert advice, facts and figures. This task is carried out

for him by staff units. Staff work is the logical projection of the principle of division of labour which is an important factor in policing.<sup>34</sup>

### 3.3.3 Command of Authority

There are five ways in which staff personnel exert influence on their subordinates.<sup>35</sup>

These are :

#### 3.3.3.1 Superior Articulation

This means that staff members are generally skilled in persuading others to accept their ideas while the line executive is less vocal.

#### 3.3.3.2 Technical Competence

The staff specialist has technical skills and knowledge not possessed by the line staff. His advice like legal counsel may have to be accepted.

#### 3.3.3.3 Command through Status

Staff personnel are normally higher in the management hierarchy and also in salary than the executive. They advise and are liable to obtain acceptance on that account.

#### 3.3.3.4 Command through Sanctions

When a situation arises where a line executive does not agree with staff proposals they then may appeal to the line executive's superior who could in turn force the line to accept the staff advice.

#### 3.3.3.5 Command by Default

Urgent problems may arise where no line action is taken. Such a situation may arise due to the lack of interest or time. In cases like these the line's executive may depend upon the lower ranking staff specialists to reach an agreement in informal discussions.<sup>36</sup>

#### 3.3.3.5.1 The Executive Head

It is the task of the executive head to see that his organisation is well geared to achieve its main objectives. These aims are achieved economically and effectively.<sup>37</sup> This important task is performed by exercising direction and supervision, by determining policy, planning by control and inspection and by the development of personnel.

It is the executive head who assumes complete responsibility for the operation of his department. He is also given commensurate operation of every organisation. As a person he must have ability and knowledge. He must understand people and be familiar with the techniques of organisation and management. It is also important that he has a working knowledge of policies.<sup>38</sup>

R. Caldwell<sup>39</sup> points out that behind every successful police operation there is the driving force of a dynamic leader. The executive head must be a leader of men - a man of intelligence, imagination, ingenuity, courage and tenacity. It is most important for him to have a general knowledge of police work and considerable skill as an administrator and policy maker.<sup>40</sup>

The duties of the other personnel<sup>41</sup> in a police department are as follows :

#### 3.3.3.5.2 The Head of a Department

He may be a Commissioner of Police entrusted with the responsibility of the administration

of his department. He is responsible to the administration.

3.3.3.5.3 Assistant Heads

These officers may have line authority and may be actual operating heads of the department, or they may have a staff position exercising authority in the name of the head of the department.

3.3.3.5.4 Captains

The function of these officers are to take charge of the functional divisions of the department.

3.3.3.5.5 Lieutenants

Lieutenants may be placed in charge of staff units of the department or assistants in charge of the functional divisions.

3.3.3.5.6 Detectives

These men are responsible for criminal investigations of major crimes. They are responsible for the supervision of investigations.

### 3.3.3.5.7 Sergeants

Sergeants could be placed in charge of functional divisions, usually squads or watches, or may supervise specific assignments of greater responsibility that is normally assigned to policemen. The most common designations are Desk Sergeants or Field (or Patrol) Sergeants.

### 3.3.3.5.8 Policemen

The functions of policemen inter alia, are to go on beats or patrols. They may be assigned to special duties at stations or headquarters.

In all these ranks supervision flows downwards and responsibility upwards. In a police organisation there is only one person in the organisation to whom each employee reports directly. Although there is a series of progressively higher ranking supervisors, through the pyramid, each in succession and the principle of one supervisor, except in emergency situations, should not be violated.<sup>42</sup>

### 3.3.4 Functions

Law enforcement services can be divided into three broad categories namely, primary services, ancillary services and administrative services.

#### 3.3.4.1 Primary Services

These services include :

##### 3.3.4.1.1 The Patrol Division

Patrol work involves extensive crime prevention duties, criminal investigation, traffic law enforcement and elements of any other line activity carried out by field personnel.<sup>43</sup>

The patrol division is the back bone of every police agency which provides a complete twenty four hour service each day of the year to the people it serves and protects.<sup>44</sup>

The main objectives of the patrol force are inter alia, detection, apprehension of criminal violators and the performance of miscellaneous services to the community.<sup>45</sup>

##### 3.3.4.1.2 The Detective Division

The basic purpose of the detective or criminal

investigation division is to investigate serious crimes in order to arrest and convict the perpetrators and to recover stolen property.<sup>46</sup>

#### 3.3.4.1.3 The Vice Division

The vice division usually operates most effectively on a flexible, single tour of duty with the hours of duty arranged by the head of the division. In large cities specialisation within the vice division is sometimes necessary. One or more men may be assigned to gambling, another squad to liquor control, another to narcotics and a further group to the control of prostitution.<sup>47</sup>

#### 3.3.4.1.4 The Youth Division (or Juvenile Division)

The actual duties of this division differ from one department to another. In some it is just an investigative unit which handles crimes committed by juveniles. In others, it is involved in rehabilitative efforts and works with the community to help prevent crime among the youth of that community. Other duties assigned to this division include detection and arrest of criminals involved in crimes of

an abnormal sexual nature or crimes in which children are victims.<sup>48</sup>

#### 3.3.4.1.5 The Traffic Division

B.W. Gocke and G.L. Payton<sup>49</sup> state that specialisation can save money and time. For example, two motor cycle officers who work as a team and who are skilled in accident investigations can undertake this assignment in less than half the time. Another advantage is that if a better job is done of an investigation, traffic officers will spend less time in court and will have a higher rate of convictions.

#### 3.3.4.2 Ancillary Services

Ancillary services are those services provided to the police while serving the public. Services within this field include :

##### 3.3.4.2.1 Records and Communication

The police record system is the main spring of a police organisation. It forms the basis for the planning and execution of police operations.

Police records provide an official memory of police operations, it is disciplinary in

character in that there must be precision, certainty of action and control over far flung operations. Records can help in the analysis of emerging situations, the anticipation of problems and the development of plans. This is administration in one of its highest forms.<sup>50</sup>

#### 3.3.4.2.2 Service and Maintenance

Maintenance and repair of property and equipment promote efficiency, morale and prestige. There can be financial savings if proper use is made of maintenance materials and facilities to prevent deterioration. Service and maintenance means inter alia, the servicing of buildings, automobiles, radios and departmentally owned firearms.<sup>51</sup>

#### 3.3.4.2.3 Laboratory

This area of police work provides technical services to aid : scientific and chemical analysis of evidence, processing and classification of fingerprints and other traces left at the scene of the crime, photographing and fingerprinting, crime scene investigations,

developing and printing photographs, etcetera.<sup>52</sup>

#### 3.3.4.2.4 Detention Facilities

The custody of prisoners is one of the services provided to ensure effective police operation. Special duties are assigned to jail personnel, these include inter alia, the search and the control of prisoners during the booking process, the booking of prisoners, the custody and return of prisoner's property and the arranging and supervision of authorized visitors to see prisoners.<sup>53</sup>

#### 3.3.4.2.5 Property Control

This unit forms a section of the records division because of the record-keeping nature of the work. The property section is responsible for the administration and control over the procurement, storage, inventory, distribution and maintenance of all supplies and equipment for the operation of the department.<sup>54</sup>

#### 3.3.4.3 Administrative Services

Included in these services are the following:

#### 3.3.4.3.1 Planning

Planning should be a necessary part of the administrative duty and it should be a continuous process. In planning, decisions are made about the future and a strategy is formulated to implement the plan; it is the keystone of police administration because it improves the efficiency of the total operation and it enables the department to achieve its goals.<sup>55</sup>

#### 3.3.4.3.2 Research

In order to plan for the future, research must be done because without research decisions become guesses. The subject matter for research in the police field can be divided into two areas namely, research relating to the behaviour of human beings and research oriented towards the improvement of the administration and management or towards operational improvement.<sup>56</sup> There are five areas in police work for which planning is necessary : criminal activity, designs of forms and their process, legal research, police equipment and experimentation.

#### 3.3.4.3.3 Direction and Co-ordination

Direction and co-ordination of human effort

is essential. Unless there is a directing authority, each individual will do as he pleases and any integrated effort and attainment will be impossible.<sup>57</sup> The Head of Police cannot perform all the prescribed duties personally, so he has to have subordinates; therefore he has to confine his activity to the management and control of his immediate subordinates. As the police department expands the administrator will require the assistance of subordinates and deputy chiefs. This would permit those serving them to develop specialized skills and techniques which will contribute to the general efficiency of the department.<sup>58</sup>

#### 3.3.4.3.4 Direction

Direction involves true leadership skills and the chief's role in this respect should not be delegated to someone else because he is given total responsibility for the efficient operation of the department.<sup>59</sup>

#### 3.3.4.3.5 Co-ordination

Co-ordination requires teamwork and a harmonious combination of efforts of two or more

persons striving towards a common goal. Co-ordination of human effort ensures unity of action in the organisation. It can best be accomplished by direct communication but cannot be accomplished by mandate. The co-ordination of effort can become difficult if the common objectives of the organisation are not accepted by those who are expected to act in unison.<sup>60</sup>

#### 3.3.4.3.6 Reporting

The law enforcement agency is probably one of the "most reporting" organisations in existence. Many police departments issue annual reports to the general public which describe the accomplishments of the Department during the year and its future plans.

Police agencies are also required to report major and specialized crimes to a central agency on forms that will indicate modus operandi. The aim is to gather State wide statistics about crime and to help local agencies to identify criminals by their modus operandi.<sup>61</sup>

#### 3.3.4.3.7 Budgeting

The main objectives of budgeting are as follows: to obtain the necessary funds for the administration and operation of the department and to help in the planning of the department. The budget is nothing more than a work programme of the department stated in terms of the money needed to carry it out.<sup>62</sup>

#### 3.4 The Quasi-Military Organisation of the Police Force

The police force is organised on a semi-military basis. It is governed in its internal management by a large number of operating procedures. To perform its basic repressive functions effectively, a semi-military type of organisation is necessary. The Chief of Police is in control and is responsible for the entire policing programme.<sup>63</sup>

The military model is attractive to police planners because the occasion for using force is unpredictable, the members of the force must be kept in a highly disciplined state of alert and preparedness. Internal discipline among policemen serve to dislodge undesirable attitudes and influences. Further, most men

receive military training and have some military experience so they need not go to outside resources to help in building a quasi-military order.<sup>64</sup>

Military methods and discipline help to eliminate certain gross inadequacies. The quasi-military character of the police is evident in the esprit de corps that pervades the institution. Since policing is a dangerous occupation, unquestioned support and loyalty is not something which officers could readily do without. Many of their pursuits are associated with a spirit of closely knit comradery. Some activities that are unpleasant are sought after if they are attended in a spirit of brotherly solidarity. Egon Bittner<sup>65</sup> remarks that policemen often state that one of the most cherished aspects of their occupation is the spirit of "one for all, and all for one." This fraternal spirit binds members of the police force and it also segregates them from the rest of society.

The founders of the modern police force created an organisation modelled on the lines of the

army but which has been modified to suit the purpose of policing. Aspects of this heritage are obvious in the style of contemporary police organisations. It is seen inter alia, in parades, marching, drill and uniform turn out. The use of a man's number rather than his name is a source of some criticism, this is one way in which the organisational style tends to depersonalize the setting in which police operations are planned.

### 3.5 Conclusion

Although modern police institutions are the end-product of several organisational principles, they are still regarded as typically bureaucratic in character. The police force is a typical bureaucratic organisation, its primary objective is the maintenance of social order.

The bureaucratic organisation is directed primarily at goal attainment. The formal structure has a rational connection with the goal. The elements of the bureaucratic structure are not immutable and alien entities. They are facets of the total structure which are capable of being altered by logical thought

so that the structure as a whole may function efficiently. In this context efficiency refers to the manner in which the primary delegated aim is realised by the structure. This means that no formal organisational structure is an end in itself it is always a means to an end.

REFERENCES

1. Whisenand, P.M. : Police Supervision : Theory and Practice, Prentice-Hall New Jersey, 1971, pp.71-2.
2. Bhambri, C.P. : Public Administration, The Macmillan Co., New York, 1957, p.42.
3. Beach, D.S. : Personnel - The Management of People at Work, The Macmillan Co., New York, 1975, p.161.
4. Wilson, O.W. : Police Administration, McGraw-and McLaren, R.C. Hill Book Company, new York, 1972, pp.59-60.
5. Caldwell, R. : Criminology, The Ronald Press Co., New York, 1956, pp.257-8.
6. President's Commission on Law Enforcement and Administration of Justice, "Challenge of Crime in a Free Society", Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 1967, p.92.
7. Sullivan, J.L. ; Introduction to Police

- Science, McGraw-Hill Book  
Company, U.S.A., 1966, p.185.
8. Eldefonso, E. : Principles of Law Enforcement  
Coffey, A. and John Wiley and Sons, Inc.,  
Grace, R.C. New York, 1968, p.138.
  9. Sullivan, J.L. : op. cit., p.185.
  10. Leonard, V.A. : The Police of the 20th  
Century, The Foundation  
Press, New York, 1964, p.3.
  11. Sullivan, J.L. : op. cit., p.185.
  12. Wilson, O.W. & : op. cit., pp.60-62.  
McLaren, R.C.
  13. Leonard, V.A. : op. cit., p.44.
  14. Wilson, O.W. & : op. cit., p.62.  
McLaren, R.C.
  15. Ibid., p.62.
  16. Ibid., p.62
  17. Gocke, B.W. & : Police Sergeants Manual,  
Payton, G.L. Legal Book Corporation,  
California, 1972, p.141.

18. Bhambri, C.P. : op. cit., p.55.
19. Wilson, O.W. & McLaren, R.C. : op. cit., p.67
20. Bhambri, C.P. : op. cit., p.57.
21. Wilson, O.W. & McLaren, R.C. : op. cit., p.68.
22. Bhambri, C.P. : op. cit., p.58.
23. Gocke, B.W. & Payton, G.L. : op. cit., pp.145-8.
24. Ibid., pp. 145-8.
25. Ibid., pp. 145-8
26. Wilson, O.W. & McLaren, R.C. : op. cit., p.52.
27. Gulick, L. : Papers on the Science of Administration, Institute of Public Administration, Columbia University Press, New York, 1937, p.54, quoted by Wilson, O.W. and McLaren, R.C. : op. cit., p.52.

28. Van Heerden, T.J. : "Formal Structure of Police Organisation" Sarp, 1973 in Abstracts on Police Science, Vol.9, No. 9, pp.18-20.
29. Eldefonso, E., : op. cit., p.141.  
Coffey, A. &  
Grace, R.C.
30. Bhambri, C.P. : op. cit., pp.44-5.
31. Adams, T.F. : Law enforcement - An Introduction to the Police Role in the Community, Prentice-Hall, Inc., New Jersey, 1968, p.114.
32. Caldwell, R. : op. cit., pp.265-6.
33. Bhambri, C.P. : op. cit., pp.68-9.
34. Ibid., p.69.
35. Ibid., p.71.
36. Adams, T.F. : op. cit., p.114.

37. Wilson, O.W. & McLaren, R.C. : op. cit., p.53.
38. Gocke, B.W. & Payton, G.L. : op. cit., p.149.
39. Caldwell, R. : op. cit., p.266.
40. Eldefonso, E., Coffey, A. & Grace, R.C. : op. cit., p.141.
41. Branham, V.C. & Kutash, S.B. : Encyclopaedia of Crimi-  
nology, Philosophical  
Library, New York, 1949,  
p.321
42. Adams, T.F. : op. cit., p.131.
43. Wilson, O.W. & McLaren, R.C. : op. cit., p.319.
44. Eldefonso, E., Coffey, A.R. & Grace, R.C. : op. cit., p.179.
45. Ibid., pp.182-3.
46. Wislon, O.W. & McLaren, R.C. : op. cit., p.369.

47. Ibid., p.97.
48. Gocke, B.W. & Payton, G.L. : op. cit., pp.129-130.
49. Ibid., pp.123-4.
50. Wilson, O.W. : Police Records, Public Administration Service, Chicago, 1942, pp.vii-viii.
51. Wilson, O.W. & McLaren, R.C. : op. cit., p.534.
52. Adams, T.F. : Law Enforcement - An Introduction to the Police Role in the Community, Prentice-Hall, Inc., New Jersey, 1968, pp.123-4.
53. Wilson, O.W. & McLaren, R.C. : op. cit., p.531.
54. Adams, T.F. : op. cit., p.123.
55. Gocke, B.W. & Payton, G.L. : op. cit., p.152.

56. Wilson, O.W. & McLaren, R.C. : op. cit., p.172.
57. Kassoﬀ, N.C. : Organisational Concepts, International Association of Police Chiefs of Police, Washington, D.C., 1967, p.11., quoted in Iannone, N.F. : Supervision of Police Personnel, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliff, New Jersey, 1970, p.155.
58. Gocke, B.W. & Payton, G.L. : op. cit., p.155.
59. Ibid., p.173.
60. Iannone, N.F. : op. cit., pp.13-14.
61. Gocke, B.W. & Payton, G.L. : op. cit., p.168
62. Wilson, O.W. & McLaren, R.C. : op. cit., p.178.
63. Taft, D.R. & England, R.W. : Criminology, Mcmillan Company, New York, 1964, p.238.

64. Bittner, E. : The Function of the Police in Modern Society, National Institute of Mental Health, Centre for Studies of Crime and Delinquency, Maryland, (Public Health Service Publication, No. 2059), November, 1970, p.54.

S E C T I O N BTHE SOUTH AFRICAN POLICE WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO  
THE ROLE OF INDIAN POLICEMENC H A P T E R 4The Development of Police Services4. An Analysis of Police Services in South Africa

This chapter outlines the development of, inter alia, policing in Natal - the birth place of Indian policemen. There are two main parts to this Chapter. The first part outlines the historical development of White policemen. In the second part an account of the historical development and the role played by Indian policemen over the period 1860 - 1983 is briefly discussed. The purpose of this arrangement is to highlight the parallel development of White and Indian policemen in Natal.

The present form of the police service in South African has been shaped by

developments over the past three centuries. Many beliefs that govern policing presently have their origins in the past, when the "police" adapted to the demands of society in those times. It is only by understanding the nature of these demands and the reaction to them can we understand the relevance of the resultant thinking to modern conditions. The very nature of a police service must be fashioned by the role that it plays in society. Police history cannot be looked at in isolation; it is not enough to know what happened, we must know why it happened, in order to relate the response to the needs of the time. The principal objective is to relate police history to the social development of the country.

#### 4.1

##### Development of Policing in the Pre-Union Period in Natal

Law No. 15 of 1861 enacted by the Lieutenant Governor of Natal provided for the organisation and regulation of an

armed and mounted police force in the Colony. The forces were sworn in before a Justice of the Peace to act as policemen within and without the Colony for preserving the peace, crime prevention, and apprehending offenders.

The Lieutenant Governor was authorised to appoint a Commandant by warrant or commission to make regulation in respect of enlistment, terms of service, tracing, arms, accoutrements, clothing, equipment, promotion, discipline, employment and the distribution of the forces.

The Commandant, his officers and men were responsible for suppressing tumults, riots, affrays and breaches of the peace in any part of the Colony while they were on duty. When not engaged in police duties they were required to act under the direction of the Colonial Engineer in constructing roads and bridges.<sup>1</sup> This was the situation in the Colony until the Police Law of 1873 was passed.

#### 4.1.1 Composition of the Force

Article 4 of the above Law stated that:  
"The said Police Force shall consist of not less than 50 men of European descent, mounted and armed, and of 150 natives of Africa or India, and of local police ...."

#### 4.1.2 The Object of the Police Force

The object of the Force was described as follows :

" ... for patrolling the country, visiting farms and estates in the Colony, for receiving and transmitting to headquarters any complaint, for preserving the peace, for preventing robberies and other crimes, for apprehending criminals and offenders against the peace."

#### 4.1.3 Defense of the Colony

Article 24 of the Police Law stated further that :

"The Lieutenant-Governor may, in case of any war or other emergency, employ any

of the police raised under the provisions of this law, for the purpose of assisting in the defense of the Colony."<sup>2</sup> The provisions of The Police Law of 1873 was put into operation immediately.

#### 4.1.4 The Mounted Police of Natal

The Mounted Police of Natal was established in 1874 as the first regular police corps of the Colony. The organisation of the corps was entrusted to Major Dartnell, later Major-General Dartnell, K.C.B., C.M.G. The Police headquarters was in Pietermaritzburg. The Mounted Police was more military than police in character, and their dual capacity proved very useful to the authorities.<sup>3</sup> In 1894 there was a complete reorganisation of the Mounted Police Force. The undermentioned changes were made :

#### 4.1.5 The Criminal Investigation Officer

The Criminal Investigation Officer became

responsible for the detection of crime and criminals. The Officer was stationed in Pietermaritzburg. His duty was to act on the orders given to him by the Chief Commissioner, to compile criminal statistics, to keep a criminal calendar in which a careful record was to be made of every person who had hitherto disregarded the law, suffered punishment and had to be watched by the police.<sup>4</sup>

#### 4.1.6 Other Officers in the Police Force

Inspectors were appointed throughout the Colony, they were commissioned officers holding an appointment from the Governor.<sup>5</sup>

Every officer connected with the criminal department was brought into the Police Force and included :  
messengers of the courts, guards and superintendents of goals. A man who was not suited for one particular branch of the service was relegated to another branch more suited to his qualities. This implied that the best use was made of men in respect

of the prevention and detection of crime and the maintenance of order.<sup>6</sup> In 1894 it became necessary for further changes to take place in the Police Force.

#### 4.1.7

#### Police Act of 1894 and Police Regulations (1894)

A new Police Act came into operation on the 1 July 1894. The subsequent Police Regulations<sup>7</sup> provided inter alia, for the following gradations of rank :

Chief Commissioner, Inspector, Sub-Inspector, Superintendent, Sergeant-Major, First-Class Sergeant, Second-Class Sergeant, Lance Sergeant, Private.

Five years later in 1899 there was a re-organisation in the Police Administration. The Administrative ranks were as follows: Chief Commissioner, Assistant Commissioner, Inspector and Paymaster, Sub Inspector and Assistant Paymaster , Sub Inspector and Adjutant, Sub Inspector and Quartermaster (Eshowe), Sergeant-Major, Paymaster Sergeant and the Criminal Investigation

Officer.

4.1.8 The Functions of the Police as contained in the Police Act of 1894

Article 108 of the Act stated that members of the Force should bear in mind that the prevention of crime was their first duty and was of greater importance than the punishment of criminals; at the same time they should make every endeavour to detect crime and apprehend the perpetrators. The absence of serious crimes in any district would be the best proof that the police in that district were active and vigilant in the discharge of their duties.<sup>8</sup>

4.2 The Development of Policing after Union

The union of the four provinces took place in 1910. Policing of the Union was a matter for the Central Government and not for the constituent provinces. All pre-Union Police Forces had merged into one national police force. The following account is given in chronological order which will enable the reader to follow the sequence of development

in the South African Police Force.

4.2.1 Police Act, Act No. 14 of 1912

The new Act came into effect on the 1 April 1913. The Union of South Africa was divided into six divisions namely : The Cape Western Division, The Cape Eastern Division. The Orange Free State Division, The Kimberley Division. The Witwatersrand Division and The Transvaal Division.

Each Division had a Divisional Inspector holding the rank of Major. His duty was to bring about uniformity in methods of work in the six divisions. From time to time conferences were held between the Divisional Inspectors and Deputy Commissioners to allow for the exchange of ideas and views. This enabled a synchronisation of methods.<sup>9</sup> A distinction was also made between Commissioned and Non-Commissioned ranks.

#### 4.2.2 Commissioned and Non-Commissioned Ranks

4.2.2.1 The ranks below commissioned ranks were: constable, corporal (mounted) or acting sergeant (foot), second-class sergeant, first-class sergeant, second-class head constable and first-class head constable.

4.2.2.2 The commissioned ranks included :

sub-Inspectors (lieutenants), Inspectors (Captains), Divisional Inspectors (Majors), Deputy Commissioners (Lieutenants, Colonels), with the commissioner ranking as Colonel.

Promotions up to head constable was Divisional. Constables in charge of outposts were appointed Lance Corporals whilst holding such appointment. The acting sergeants of the foot branch exercised powers only entrusted by law to sergeants, thereby making policing in towns much easier.<sup>10</sup>

#### 4.2.3 The Effect of World War I on the Police Force

The outbreak of World War I on the 3 August 1914 caused a great upheaval in the South African Police Force. The South African Mounted Rifles were immediately mobilised for active service. Only a small nucleus remained in the home front to provide protection. The Force throughout the Union was thinned out. Many unimportant stations were closed down, some were never reopened others only temporarily. A number of special constables were engaged to help in some areas,<sup>11</sup> but when the war ended in November 1918 the country returned to normal.

#### 4.2.4 The Municipal Police. The South African Mounted Rifles and the South African Police

In 1916 the Commissioner of Police<sup>12</sup> reported that in Durban and Pietermaritzburg there was triple police control namely, The Municipal Police, The South African Mounted Rifles and The South African

Police. This state of affairs was not conducive to the best results from a police point of view, but the Commissioner stated that they functioned well together in the interest of the public.

In 1917 it was reported by the Commissioner of the South African Police that the Mounted Police administered the bye-laws of their respective boroughs. The South African Mounted Rifles had control of the charge offices in both boroughs and helped with the general supervision of the sub urban areas. The South African Police was responsible for the prevention and detection of crime other than the bye-laws within the Borough.<sup>13</sup>

On 1 April 1920 four of the five regiments of the South African Mounted Rifles were disbanded and it was decided that the South African Police Force should police those areas which were formerly taken care by the South African Mounted Rifles. As a result of this a large number of Officers and non-

Commissioned Officers of the South African Police Force and others were retrenched. On the 31 March 1926 the one remaining regiment was abolished.<sup>14</sup>

On 1 April 1927 the Pietermaritzburg Borough Police was absorbed into the South African Police Force.<sup>15</sup>

In 1936 the Durban Borough Police was handed over to the South African Police. Durban still maintained a small force of Municipal Police for traffic control.<sup>16</sup>

#### 4.2.5 The Graham Commission

Towards the end of 1919 the Graham Commission on Police Matters suggested inter alia that changes should take place in police ranks. The first and second-class head constables were amalgamated as were those of the first and second-class sergeants. They were termed first-class sergeants. The rank of corporal became second-class sergeant.

The abolition of the rank of corporal was

due to the fact that a large number of laws conferred powers on police sergeants. These powers were withheld from men of lower ranks. Those who were in charge of police stations were mainly corporals therefore this change was necessary.

Divisional promotions were discontinued. A general promotion list for the entire Union was adopted. Examinations were made more competitive as well as qualifying so that there was enough incentive for promotions.<sup>17</sup> Numerous other developments and improvements were made from time to time as is outlined below :

#### 4.2.6 The South African Criminal Bureau

The well known historian Hattersley, points out that criminal investigation was not very effective up to the end of the 19th Century. As an example, in 1892 a magisterial commission reported that the Natal Mounted Police was largely a failure in so far as the prevention and detection of crime was concerned.<sup>18</sup> He stated that the

magistrates had until that time been charged to a great extent with the investigation of crime.

It was through the combined efforts of Lieutenant Clarke of the Natal Mounted Police and Attorney-General Escombe, that provision was made in Act No. 1 of 1894 for the establishment of a detective section. Lieutenant Clarke was appointed as its head.

In 1902 Lieutenant Clarke paid a visit to Scotland Yard where he made a careful study of the finger-print system. On his return to Natal he was made responsible for the founding of the first finger print, identification and archive office in Natal. By that time Lieutenant Clarke was appointed to the post of Commissioner of Police in Natal in 1906, he had built up a well organised detective section.

However, Hattersley points out that Lieutenant Clarke was not the first person to introduce the finger print system in

South Africa. Henry, an Inspector-General of Police from India, who had worked out his own finger print system, was invited to South Africa in 1900 to reorganise the Transvaal Police.<sup>19</sup>

During his stay in the Transvaal, he instructed Passman in finger print technique, and it is the latter who is universally regarded as the founder of the South African Criminal Bureau.<sup>20</sup>

General L.P. Neethling became head of the South African Police new Forensic Division in Pretoria on 15 January 1971. Under his able leadership the Forensic Laboratory grew from a staff of two to thirty scientists and others handling approximately four hundred cases a month. The staff included a number of specially trained policemen at various stations in the country who knew what exhibits have to be collected for scientific examination.

On 29 January 1982, it was announced that

after many years of research, a finger print expert of the South African Police, Colonel Phillip Putter developed a scientific method to assist farmers in tracing lost cattle by means of snout identification prints.

Colonel Putter's system is identical to the finger print identifying one. It is hoped that the police in the future will use this system if farmers who report cattle thefts have snout prints.

#### 4.2.7 The South African Police Gazette

The South African Police Gazette was edited and controlled by the South African Criminal Bureau and made its first appearance on the 4 January 1921. The Gazette contained details of persons wanted, descriptions of stolen property and other information concerning crime and criminals.<sup>21</sup>

#### 4.2.8 Lawlessness on the Rand

There was an upheaval on the Rand in 1922. A series of strikes on the coal and gold

mines was taking place. In short there was a general armed uprising and lawlessness.<sup>22</sup> The whole affair was covered by a period of less than three months. The South African Police was commended for the outstanding way in which they performed their duties. The Rand Daily Mail described the work of the police in the following terms :

"We do not think it an exaggeration to say that the police saved Johannesburg... The Rand owes much to the police. The courage, patience and endurance of the men made the whole country realise as perhaps it had never done before what a fine Force it possesses in the South African Police."<sup>23</sup>

The Commissioner added :

"..... By their splendid disciplines and good conduct... .. those officers, non-commissioned officers and men concerned have established a reputation which the Force is rightly proud of,

and have set an example which should be an incentive to the Force to live up to."<sup>24</sup>

#### 4.2.9 The Police Dog Depot

The Police Dog Depot was established in 1923 at Quagga-poort in the Transvaal. The first police dogs were imported from Holland in 1911. Training and breeding took place on a small scale at the Transvaal Police Depot in Pretoria. Later kennels were established at Irene in Pretoria where dogs were bred, trained and posted to suitable centres for service in tracking down criminals. Suitable men were selected for training as dog masters. They trained with their dogs so that the dogs became used to their handlers whilst being trained.<sup>25</sup>

At the South African Police Dog School, dogs are trained inter alia for anti-terrorist activity, border services, and to combat the dagga menace. This unit was established on the 4 October 1971.<sup>26</sup>

#### 4.2.10 Medals and Decorations

In 1923 the Police Good Service Medal was inaugurated. This award was made to men other than commissioned officers who had served for at least 18 years with an irreproachable character. It was also awarded to members with a special clasp, for services of a particularly gallant or distinguished nature, irrespective of the length of service of the recipient.<sup>27</sup>

In 1964 the Commissioner of Police announced the creation of the following medals and decoration to be awarded to members of the Force. They were : The South African Police Cross for Bravery, The South African Police Star for Distinguished Service, The South African Police Star for Merit and the South African Police Medal for Faithful Service.<sup>28</sup>

#### 4.2.11 Camel Patrols

At the end of 1929 it was found that the Force had many more camels than was

necessary for patrol duties. To dispose of these animals the various Zoological Gardens were given a few.

#### Duty on Railway Premises

Prior to 1929 the South African Police did duty in the harbour area, but after 1929 the South African Railways and Harbours took over duties from the South African Police in the Harbour area. The police who were formerly on duty in the harbour were transferred to other districts in the country.<sup>29</sup>

#### 4.2.12 Mechanising of the Force

In 1931 the process of mechanising the Force began. Horses in many rural areas were replaced by light vans and motor cycles. Due to the huge increase in the population, the expansion of industry, and the multiplicity of legislative enactments, it was necessary for the Police to be provided with the means of getting through more work.<sup>30</sup>

#### 4.2.13 South West Africa

Eric Rosenthal states that the Union Parliament decided to provide for the policing of the Mandated Territory by the South African Police, and for the absorption of the former South West African Police into the larger body. This took place on the 1 June 1939. Since then the South African Police has policed the territory and South West Africa became a Police Division.<sup>31</sup>

#### 4.2.14 A Two-Way Radio System

A two way radio system came into operation in 1950 in Durban and Johannesburg. This was a valuable device used in the fight against crime. At that time it was not possible to inaugurate the two-way system in Cape Town, nor was it possible to increase the fleet of radio cars in Durban, or even extend the system to other parts of South Africa. This system was very successful and demonstrated that it was a deterrent to would-be criminals, and

many arrests were made through it. The following statistics amply reflect this fact.

Table A.: The Effect of the Two-Way Radio System on Arrests

	No. of Messages	No of Arrests
Johannesburg (two-way)	56,346	33,380
Durban (two-way)	12,394	10,110

32

The Security Police are presently using two-way radios to enable them to keep in 24 hour contact with police headquarters in Johannesburg. It was announced on 11 May 1979 that this system will in the near future be extended to the Flying Squad, detectives and the Uniformed Branch of the South African Police Force. The communication system consists of a compact radio which fits into a bracket in any police car, keeping it in contact with the new central radio control room

to be built at the Brixton Flying Squad Headquarters. The system is expected, when adopted, to revolutionise crime fighting. A policeman in difficulty will be able to radio headquarters for help without leaving his post.

#### 4.2.15 Unit Value System

It was realised in 1957 that there was no uniform and reliable system to grade control posts. After careful investigation a "Unit Value System" was devised and adopted as a basis for the grading of control posts. This method was also used to serve as a guide in arriving at other staff requirements. The upgrading of a member to a senior post following the adoption of this system resulted in a better post structure for the Force and an improvement of the potential rate of progression of every member.<sup>33</sup>

#### 4.2.16 Restructuring the Administration at Police Headquarters

In 1960 the Commissioner of Police men=

tioned in his Annual Report that a re-organisation scheme was put into operation aimed at effectively organising the Force as a whole, by training and preparing it for statutory duties and commitments. Reorganisation entailed the restructuring of the Administration at Headquarters, the institution of an Advisory Board and the use of woman for clerical work.<sup>34</sup>

#### 4.2.17

#### Police Public Relations Division

The South African Police established a new division of public relations to contribute to a sound understanding between the police and the public. The Minister of Police, Mr J.T. Kruger, announced the Division began its work on 1 February 1979, and was headed by Brigadier Jan Visser, former Divisional Commissioner of Soweto and the Witwatersrand.

Brigadier Visser has been highly praised for his handling of the riots in Soweto and his sympathetic understanding of the problems of the people of the Black city.<sup>35</sup>

#### 4.2.18 Overtime Work for Policemen

Policemen will in future be able to "work in" time off due to them, and be compensated for it. The Minister of Police announced this scheme in Parliament on the 15 February 1979. The Minister explained that this was not a straight scheme. It meant that men up to the rank of Major could volunteer to work on days off and be paid extra for this.<sup>36</sup>

#### 4.2.19 Police Uniforms

Changes in the Uniforms worn by policemen were made in 1954. The changes included:

4.2.19.1 The abolition of the blue uniform and helmets and in the case of officers, swords. Riding breeches and boots were only to be worn when on mounted duty.

4.2.19.2 Only when on certain duties and when climatic conditions warranted it, jackets were not to be worn.<sup>37</sup>

Police of all races received a uniform

allowance of R214-00 a year from 1 April 1979. The allowance is intended to cover the cost of police uniforms and the everyday working outfits of detectives.<sup>38</sup>

While the White policemen made fairly rapid progress in their careers for which they must be complemented, a small band of Indian men contributed in a small way to the maintenance of law and order in Natal. The following account traces the development of Indian policemen in South Africa.

#### 4.3

#### The Role of Indian Policemen Prior to Union

In the second part of this chapter the author gives an outline of the historical development of Indian police in South Africa. While taking note that White policemen were in existence as far back as 1652, the Indian began contributing to law enforcement as soon as he arrived in South African in 1860.<sup>39</sup> Since then

White and Indian policemen have worked amicably together but each developed at his own pace and made significant contributions to policing in South Africa.

Among the indentured labourers who settled in Natal were people from various walks of life. There were inter alia clerks, warriors and policemen.<sup>40</sup>

The first Indian to join the Police Force was constable E. Subham who was enlisted on the 30 August 1861. His appointment was made by the Lieutenant Governor of Natal. In addition to his policing duties he assisted in the Durban County Gaol and was interpreter at the resident magistrates Court of Durban.<sup>41</sup>

By 1882 the number of Indian constables in the Colony increased to 7. They were sent to various parts of Durban for police duties. There was one constable in Durban and two each in the County of Durban (Umlazi Division), County of Victoria

(Inanda Division) and the County of Alexandra.<sup>42</sup> Although the increase was most encouraging, the demand for more constables became imperative because there was increasing lawlessness in the Colony.

In his report to the Colonial Secretary, the Commander of the Natal Mounted Police, Commander J.G. Dartnell stated inter alia, "I have found great difficulty in procuring men, having been unable, so far to obtain the number of Coolies or Natives required ..."<sup>43</sup> Soon there was a further increase in the number of Indian constables in the Force. Five Indians from the Natal Mounted Police were appointed detectives and 15 others awaited enlistment.<sup>44</sup> The detectives worked together with district magistrates. They carried out regular inspections of native huts and scrutinized dog licences.<sup>45</sup>

In 1894 there was a complete reorganisation of the Natal Mounted Police. The new

Police Bill introduced on 1 May 1894, provided for the consolidation and regulation of the Police Forces in the Colony under one head. It was also the aim of this Police Bill to maintain a separate Police Force as distinguished from soldiers and to amalgamate the various police forces into one Force. There was a need for this change because at that time there were a number of small police forces scattered throughout the Colony under different heads. As a result of this there was no central controlling body like at Police Headquarters. It was realised then that such a measure would enable the Minister to be directly responsible to Parliament for policing of the Colony. It was also planned to have the Chief Commissioner of Police under the Minister.<sup>46</sup>

By 1895 the number of police stations increased to 60 with many more being in the course of formation.

The Police Force consisted of Mounted, Foot, Railway and Water Police, including also goalers, warders, turnkeys and convict guards. There were a number of Indians employed in the various capacities. It was possible for any member of the Force to be promoted or transferred from one branch to another with the consent and authority of the Chief Commissioner of Police.<sup>47</sup>

The Police Act of 1894 outlined the nature of uniforms to be worn by Indian constables. Article 421 of the Act states that Indian constables were provided with the following clothing for their use, these were : "Great coat; two pairs trousers; serge; jacket, serge; boots; jersey; turban; two blankets."<sup>48</sup>

In June 1895, there were 24 Indian constables in the Force with a further 6 men awaiting enlistment. These men were scattered throughout the Colony and served at stations in Durban, Newcastle, Dundee,

Ladysmith, Estcourt, Verulum, Howick, Richmond, Umzinto and Port Shepstone.

Since Natal had a multi-racial population Indian constables were given an incentive to earn extra salary if they passed, to the satisfaction of the Government, examinations in any of the following languages namely : Dutch, Zulu, Hindustani, or Tamil. This would entitle them to receive increases in their daily pay at the following rates :

Language	Higher Standard	Lower Standard
1. Dutch	one shilling	six pence
2. Zulu	one shilling	six pence
3. Hindustani or Tamil	one shilling	six pence

Besides the above allowances which Indian constables received, the daily salary was as follows : Sergeants received 1s.9d. per day including an allowance for rations. Privates received 1s.6d.

per day including an allowance for rations.

In 1896 there was a total of 30 Indian constables and 4 Indian Railway Policemen in the establishment. There were 5 more awaiting enlistment who were eventually absorbed into the Force in 1897.

After the Union of the 4 provinces in 1910 all the pre-Union Police Forces merged into one national police force. Those Indian policemen who served at stations outside Durban and Pietermaritzburg joined the new South African Police Force. Incidentally, Pietermaritzburg and Durban had their own police forces controlled by the Boroughs concerned. It was only in 1927 and 1936 respectively that these forces from these cities joined the South African Police.

#### 4.4 Post-Union Development of Indians in the South African Police Force

The first two Indian policemen who joined

the South African Police Force were constables Maghali and Jacob Mahomed. They were appointed on 1 April 1913. Prior to this they were members of the Borough police who started their police careers in 1904.<sup>49</sup>

The recollections and experiences of pioneering members of the Force are a very important part of Police history. Once lost, these can never be replaced. Ideally, an organisation like the Police Force should preserve its history while there are still some original members available to interpret it.

The following are accounts of personal experiences of pioneer Indian policemen illustrating the nature, functions and exciting moments of their career :

#### 4.4.1 Indian Sergeant S. Beharie

Sergeant Beharie is over 70 years of age and recalls having trained in Natal in 1922. His training included aspects of

Note: The ages of ex-policemen were calculated as at 31st December, 1980.

law, discipline, courtesy and loyalty.

Outlining his duties as a policeman he mentioned that he was required to investigate crimes like robbery, theft and assault and at other times perform clerical duties, give evidence in court, be on patrol duty or visit to advise junior members of the Force.

Transport facilities were poor and policemen either walked, rode bicycles or travelled by train. The only weapons they carried was a wooden baton.

Indian policemen wore a navy blue uniform. The jacket had a close-up neck with two breast pockets, black boots. Helmets were also worn.

#### 4.4.2 Indian Constable I. Jussub

Constable Jussub is over 70 years of age. He joined the South African Police in 1928. He had no formal training as such. His main duty was to walk the beat because

there were no transport facilities available.

He describes an exciting experience he had as a policeman in the Transvaal. While attempting to arrest an African in West Street. He (constable Jussub) was on duty guarding bicycles in front of O.K. Bazaars and noticed an African stealing a rain coat from a car. Constable Jussub gave chase but the thief resisted arrest. Just then a European police officer arrived and assisted in the arrest. The African was handcuffed, charged and was eventually found guilty of theft.

#### 4.4.3 Senior Detective Sergeant Moodley

This policeman is over 67 years and joined the South African Police force in 1932. He trained to be a policeman in Durban. Senior policemen taught student policemen various aspects of practical work necessary for the police=

men. The candidate wrote 3 examinations in the year that followed. Having passed these examination he was appointed to the staff of the Investigation Department. He investigated crimes such as murder and theft. He rode on horseback, carried a baton and wore civilian clothing.

This detective describes an exciting experience he had on duty as follows:  
"I found a body in a bush. It was the body of an Indian male. He had stab wounds all over his body and there was no further clues or detail that was known. With the help of my informers and after much investigation we managed to detain four men after 6 months of investigation. These four men were tried and sentenced to death for murder."

#### 4.4.4 Constable Moodley

Constable Moodley of Pietermaritzburg is now between 60-70 years old. He joined the Force in 1940 and trained at Wentworth in Durban. As far as he could remember

he received instructions in drill, physical training and law. His duties included the investigation of crime and patrol. For his investigations and patrols he used either the bicycle or rode on horseback.

Constable Moodley recalls the events which took place when a report of murder was made to him. "I proceeded to the place Riverside where I found two Bantu male bodies lying not far from one another in a wattle plantation. The bodies were carried to the nearest mortuary. Investigations continued throughout the night, the following morning two Bantu were arrested by the police."

#### 4.4.5 Detective Sergeant Naidoo

This policeman is aged between 50-60 years, he joined the South African police in 1943. He stated that there were not training depots or colleges in those early days. Practical police work was done from the date of enlistment.

All new members of the Force were guided by their seniors and they soon knew what was expected of them.

Policemen worked in shifts. They were on day shift for two weeks of each month and on night shift for the remaining two weeks of the month. Night duty extended from 21h45 to 5h45. The day shift consisted of what was called broken shifts. There were two groups, the one began at 5h45 and ended at 21h45 and the other period commenced at 13h45 and ended at 17h45.

While on beat duty policemen were supervised by the more experienced policemen. In most cases they were Africans holding the rank of corporal or lance sergeant. For being late at a point a policeman was fined, for example for being 5 minutes late, he was fined 5 shillings.

The salary paid in those days was £6. per month.

An important point was that the beat had to be walked whether it rained or hailed.

#### 4.4.6 Police Promotions

Up to 1953 there were only two stages in the promotion ladder for non-Whites (including Indians) in the Force. These were the ranks of 1st and 2nd class sergeants. Owing to the expansion of the non-White establishment, the opportunity for systematic progress appeared to be inadequate and ineffective. To overcome the problem the following new ranks were created : senior sergeant, 1st class sergeant, 2nd class sergeant, lance sergeant and corporal. The creation of these new ranks gave the Indian policemen the opportunity for advancement. It also created satisfaction and ensured greater efficiency among all Indian policemen.<sup>50</sup>

The ranks of lance sergeant and lance corporal were in operation for only a year and it became apparent to the admini=

stration that these two ranks were not entirely practical and effective, so in 1954 these ranks were abolished.

In 1970 the Cabinet of the South African Government approved of a limited number of Indians and other non-Whites to be appointed to the rank of lieutenant.

In view of this decision, further changes in the structure of the ranks were made. The ranks of sergeant and senior sergeant were amalgamated into one rank namely, that of sergeant. The senior sergeant's insignia that is, a three-bar chevron below a castle was retained for the new rank of sergeant.

The rank of chief sergeant was changed to that of senior sergeant which was designated now by the present chief sergeant's insignia namely, a three-bar chevron, below a castle mounted within a semi-circular laurel wreath.

The designation chief sergeant special

grade was abolished and that rank became known as chief sergeant, the insignia was a three-bar chevron, below a castle encircled by a laurel wreath.<sup>51</sup>

From the 1 April 1970, the revised ranks applying to Indians and other non-Whites were as follows :

Table B. : Amendments to Ranks Applicable to Indian Policemen since 1970

Previous Designation	Revised Designation
Chief Sergeant, special grade	Chief Sergeant
Chief Sergeant	Senior Sergeant
Senior Sergeant and Sergeant	Sergeant
Constable	Constable
Constable Labourer	abolished

52

#### 4.4.7 Promotion of Indians to Senior Posts

Keeping in line with Government policy, a police station was established in the

Indian township of Chatsworth in Durban on 1 September 1965.

This station was manned by Indian policemen but the Station Commander was Lieutenant G.M. Smit. Lieutenant G.M. Smith retained his position there until Lieutenant T. Pillai was appointed Station Commander on 1 September 1967. As the new Station Commander he was in charge of more than 90 Indian policemen and was responsible for maintaining law and order in the township with more than 150,000 Indian residents.<sup>53</sup>

In 1974 two Indians, Lieutenant S. Pillai and Lieutenant K. Nayagar were promoted to the rank of Captain.<sup>54</sup> Three years later, Captain S. Pillai became a Major.<sup>55</sup> In April 1980 he was promoted to the rank of lieutenant-colonel, the highest rank attained by an Indian in the South African Police.<sup>56</sup>

#### 4.5 Conclusion

Indians in South Africa contributed much to the maintenance of law and order since 1861, the progress of Indian Policemen in the hierarchical structure of the South African Police has not been very encouraging. This becomes clear when a comparative study of White and Indian policemen is made for the period 1861-1982.

The author is of the opinion that there were three factors responsible for the slow progress of Indian policemen these were :

Firstly, educational facilities for Indians did not exist to prepare them for better opportunities. Professor A.L. Behr states that in the early days of Indian settlement, education was a family affair in which Indian youths received instructions in the mother tongue and in religion from the better educated members of the community.

It was only at the turn of the century that education went up to the standard four level. Post-primary education started on a hesitant note and began to take shape in the nineteen forties, but the growth was slow. It was only in 1978 that education for Indians became compulsory. Administrative responsibility in the Police Force requires a minimum educational qualification for consideration besides other requirements.

Secondly, Indian Policemen did not have the opportunity to aspire for promotion posts beyond that of a sergeant. The more senior ranks in the Police Force were not open to Indians, hence there was no scope for promotion to commissioned ranks.

Thirdly, proper training facilities for Indian policemen did not exist until early in the nineteen fifties when proper

training facilities were for the first time provided for Indians in Wentworth, Durban. The lack of training facilities also hindered the progress of the Indian policeman.

REFERENCES

1. Law No. 15 of 1861.
2. Police Law, 1873.
3. Official Year Book of the Union, No. 4 of 1921, p. 390.
4. Clarke, W.J. : "A History of the Natal Police," Nongqai, p. 363.
5. Ibid., p. 364.
6. Ibid., pp. 364-365.
7. Police Regulations of 1894.
8. Police Act of 1894, article 108.
9. Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police II", Non-gqai, January, 1947, p. 17.
10. Ibid., p. 19.
11. Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police III", Nongqai, February, 1947, p. 161.

12. Report of the Commissioner of Police for the year ended 1916, p. 63.
13. Report of the Commissioner of Police for the year ended 1917, p. 77.
14. Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police IV", Non=gqai, March, 1947, pp. 305-306.
15. Natal Ordinance No. 5 of 1928. also  
Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police VII, Non=gqai, July, 1947, p. 883.
16. Cooper F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police XII, Non=gqai, November, 1947, pp. 1457-1458.
17. Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police IV, Non=gqai, March, 1947, pp. 305-306.

18. Hattersley, A.F.: The First South African Detectives, Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1960, pp. 150-170.
19. Ibid., p. 168.
20. Ibid.
21. Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the year ended 1921-1922, p. 87.
22. Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police V" Nongqai, April, 1947, p. 449.
23. Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police VI" Nongqai, May, 1947, p. 598.
24. Ibid., p. 598.
25. Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police VII," Nongqai, June, 1947,

p. 741.

26. Annual Report of the Commissioner of the S.A. Police for the year ended 1972.
27. Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police VII, Nongqai, June, 1947, p. 741.
28. Annual Report of the Commissioner for the year ended 30 June 1964, p. 1.
29. Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police XI", Nongqai, October, 1947, p. 1313.
30. Ibid., p. 1314.
31. Rosenthal, E. : Encyclopaedia of Southern Africa, Warne and Co., Ltd., London, 1965, p. 512. (3rd edition):
32. Annual Report of the Commissioner of the S.A. Police for the year ended 1951, p. 7.

33. Annual Report of the Commissioner of the S.A. Police for the year 1957, p. 2.
34. Annual Report of the Commissioner of the S.A. Police for the year 1960, p. 4.
35. Department of Information : South African Digest, Week ended 19 January 1979, p. 4.
36. Announcement by the Minister of Police Mr Jimmy Kruger, in Cape Town on 16 February 1979.
37. Annual Report of the Commissioner of the S.A. Police for the year 1954, p. 2.
38. Department of Information, : South African Digest, Week ended 30 March 1979, p. 7.
39. Bulpin, T.V. : To the Shores of Natal, Howard B. Timmins, Cape Town, p. 251.
40. Natal Daily News : "Our Indian Community", 24 February 1976.
41. Natal Blue Book, 1876, p. C 44.
42. Natal Blue Book, 1882, p. AA 16.

43. Natal Blue Book, 1890-1891, p. F 2.
44. Natal Blue Book, 1890-1891, pp. F 1-17.
45. Natal Blue Book, 1892-1893, p. E 2.
46. Clarke, W.J. : "A History of the Natal Police", Nonqgai, p. 363.
47. Police Regulations, 1894.
48. Police Act of 1894, article 421.
49. Department of Information : "Fiat-Lux", October, 1971, p. 23.
50. Annual Report of the Commissioner of the S.A. Police for the year 1953, p. 3.
51. Annual Report of the Commissioner of the S.A. Police for the period 1 July 1968, pp. 2-3.
52. Annual Report of the Commissioner of the S.A. Police for the period 1 July 1969 - 30 June 1970.
53. Information obtained from Colonel S. Pillai.
54. Department of Information : "Police

Promotions", Fiat Lux, Vol. 9, No. 8,  
September, 1973, p. 10.

55. Information obtained from Colonel S. Pillai.
56. Ibid.
57. Behr, A.L. : Historical Perspectives  
to Indian Education,  
Fiat Lux, Vol. 5, No. 9,  
November 1970, pp. 8-12.

CHAPTER 5THE FUNCTIONS AND ORGANISATION OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN  
POLICE FORCE5. The Functions, Organisation and Evaluation  
of the Force5.1 Introduction

The performance of police duties depends upon proper organisation. Any group of people who band together to achieve common goals must organize or fail. Good organisation is crucial to policing because it entails split-second timing, care and speed. In this chapter the details regarding the organization of the South African Police Force is preceded by a discussion of the main functions of the Force. This is followed by a brief evaluation of the organization.

5.2 Functions

The South African Police Force is a highly centralised, and independent government department under the control of the Minister of Police.<sup>1</sup>

The State has complete control over the Police Force.

The powers, functions and duties of the police are not limited to particular places. For example it can take action even on railway premises, although policing at such places is the responsibility of the South African Railway Police.

The South African Railway Police have exactly the same authority as the South African Police and they exercise the same powers and duties in their area of jurisdiction as prescribed by law for the South African Police. Therefore, there is always close co-operation between these forces.<sup>2</sup>

In areas where there are traffic policemen certain traffic offences and the control thereof are attended to by the South African Police. The investigation of any offence or alleged offence against the traffic regulations, reported to or noticed by the police is a function of the South African Police.<sup>3</sup>

Other minor police organisations are the Urban and Municipal Traffic Organisation and the

Municipal Police. The Municipal Police exist to enforce the city by-laws and to make arrests. These minor police organisations confine their duties to clearly demarcated areas of activity.

The South African Police Act, Act No. 7 of 1958 as amended clearly sets out the major functions of the Police Force. These are : the preservation of the internal security of the Republic, the maintenance of law and order, the investigation of any offence and the prevention of crime.

#### 5.2.1 The Preservation of the Internal Security of the Republic

The term "secure" means free from danger. To preserve the internal security means that peace and order should be maintain within the borders of the country. It does not only embrace the safety of the State, the lawful government, its institutions and property but also all members of the population, their property, rights of self determination and personal freedom.

The internal security of the State can be threatened in many ways, not only by individuals but also by Communist organisations which aim to

overthrow the lawful authority and the existing social order of the Republic. Their aims are achieved by sabotage, terrorism and other forms of violence.

Wide powers of arrest, search and detention are given to the police. These powers are prescribed by law. Individuals can be detained and held in custody without trial. In such circumstances the courts may not intervene. Persons could be detained for a period of 180 days for any of the following reasons : if that person is a potential State witness, or if there is a danger of the person absconding, or is likely to be tampered with, or if the detention is in his own interests, or in the interests of the administration of Justice. A detainee may be held in custody of successive periods of 180 days. In terms of the General Law Amendment Act of 1966, a suspected terrorist may be detained for a period of up to 14 days for interrogation.<sup>5</sup>

Under the Terrorism Act of 1967 <sup>6</sup> a detainee may be held and interrogated until he has replied adequately to all questions put to him. He may be kept in solitary confinement indefinitely if

the Commissioner of Police and the Minister of Justice decide to do so.<sup>7</sup> No one except State officials may have access to him and are entitled to obtain information about him.

The Public Safety Act of 1953 provides for the proclamation of a state of emergency. The promulgated regulations indicate the power and authority given to the police to help in the termination of a declared state of emergency. The Public Safety Act of 1953 provides for the proclamation of a state of emergency. The promulgated regulations indicate the power and authority given to the police to help in the termination of a declared state of emergency. The Public Safety Act is intended to ensure the authority of the State and the safety of the public.<sup>8</sup>

Further, the Unlawful Organisations Act of 1960 does not declare any organisation to be unlawful, but it empowers the State President to do so if he feels the safety of the public or the maintenance of public order is seriously threatened.<sup>9</sup>

### 5.2.2 The Maintenance of Law and Order

The regulating factor in society is the law. The law defines the powers, rights and responsibilities of people in society. Laws were designed to maintain order, but it would be useless without an efficient police force.<sup>10</sup>

Numerous laws have been enacted and are implemented by the police. Some of the more important ones include the Arms and Ammunition Act, Act No. 75 of 1969 empowers the police to demand inter alia, the surrender of arms upon the request of a magistrate or a Native Commissioner together with the licence or certificate from an individual<sup>11</sup> who has in his possession such arms.

The Liquor Act, Act No. 87 of 1977 empowers the police to take action in respect of persons who are liable to penalties, for example, to eject persons from licenced premises who are drunk, violent, disorderly or undesirable.<sup>12</sup>

Order in society is necessary for peaceful co-existence. It is therefore necessary for order to be established at public meetings, international soccer matches, boxing and wrestling

tournaments.<sup>13</sup> A wide discretion is left to the police in regard to the maintenance of order at public meetings.<sup>14</sup>

To make arrests is an important function of the police. Arrests are made without a warrant in certain circumstances, although it is advisable for the police to have a warrant authorising the arrest. Any person arrested without a warrant is not detained for a period longer than 48 hours unless a warrant for his further detention is obtained.<sup>15</sup> When making the arrest the police actually touches or confines the body of the person to be arrested, unless he submits to custody by word or action.<sup>16</sup>

Among their other duties are the handling of minor matters like the control of children, neighbourhood, family disputes, attending to complaints of noise and the controlling of unruly crowds that could develop into riots and eventually disaster.

### 5.2.3 The Investigation of Offenses or Alleged Offenses

Criminal investigation is police activity directed towards the detection and apprehension of

criminals. Usually it is the patrol policeman who is the first at the scene of the crime. It is his action which is of the greatest importance in an investigation.<sup>17</sup> Some of the ways in which the police operate in carrying out these important functions are as follows :

- 5.2.3.1 By seizing any vehicle or receptacle which may have been used to convey articles or substances for criminal purposes and could be used as evidence in court.<sup>18</sup>
- 5.2.3.2 To investigate offences or alleged offences against traffic laws which were reported or noticed by the police for example, road traffic offences.<sup>19</sup>
- 5.2.3.3 By inspecting licenced premises during hours of sale when it is believed that there has been a contravention of the provisions of the Act.<sup>20</sup> The police may also demand the production of the licence authorizing such sale or supply to the public or even seize those things which they may consider to be unlawful or with which they feel an offence was committed.

The above are some of the ways in which the

Uniformed Branch policemen operate in the investigation of crimes.

The functions of the Detective Branch are centred around the investigation of theft, motor theft, fraud, forgery, murder, rape, abduction, arson, housebreaking, smuggling of firearms, liquor, dagga, gold, diamonds, contravention of the Companies Act and various other illegal activities. Detectives work long hours to get their men.<sup>21</sup>

#### 5.2.4 The Prevention of Crime

The main function of the Uniformed Branch is the prevention of crime.<sup>22</sup> These men stand in the front line in the fight against crime.

Crime prevention is one of the major tasks of the police. The term "prevention" implies the action taken to obviate the commission of crimes. Measures are taken to prevent the actual offence occurring.

There are three general methods employed by the South African Police to prevent crime. These are :

##### 5.2.4.1 By a purely deterrent action achieved by

advertising the presence of the police. The sight of a uniformed policeman, or a police vehicle will probably deter a would-be criminal from committing an offence.

4.2.4.2 The second method is surprise or fear. The police do not mean to frighten or harm people. The element of surprise is illustrated by the fact that many people drive slowly if they suspect a traffic policeman to be in the vicinity. In this way some people are deterred from breaking into a house because of fear that a policeman in civilian clothing might be observing.

5.2.4.3 Thirdly, the method of general "clean-up". This entails the arrest of a number of people for petty offences.<sup>23</sup>

Closely related to prevention duties is the protection of life and property. Policemen are trained in first aid so that they could be of immediate assistance to victims in times of emergencies like riots, accidents and fires.

In cases where there has been an outbreak of fire the police make the necessary investi-

gations and render assistance to the victims. The owners of the premises and adjoining buildings are warned of the danger and the fire brigade is summoned immediately.<sup>24</sup>

Policemen are also required to report to the proper authorities when there are outbreaks of infectious, contagious or dangerous diseases like leprosy and rabies.

The Animal Protection Act of 1962<sup>25</sup> makes provision for the police to use their discretion in destroying animals which may be diseased or seriously injured in the absence of the owner. Such animals may be destroyed with instruments or appliances which would cause little suffering as possible.

The Children's Act of 1960 imposes certain duties on policemen regarding children in need of care. A policeman is entitled to remove a child from any place, to a place of safety, if that child is in need of care, or if he has reason to believe that certain offences have been committed against or in connection with a child. A child who is

thus removed must be brought before a Children's Court as soon as possible.<sup>26</sup>

Under the General Law Amendment Act, Act No. 71 of 1968, people possessing dangerous weapons such as daggers, knives, axes and solid rubber batons would be guilty of offences, unless they could prove that such weapons were required by them for lawful purposes.<sup>27</sup>

#### 5.2.5 Defence of the South African Borders and Combatting of Terrorism

Recently, the functions of the South African Police were extended to include the defence of the borders of the Republic and the combatting of terrorism.

Since 1965 terrorists have infiltrated across the borders to lay land mines. This action by terrorists have posed a serious threat to South Africa especially when certain countries beyond its borders have supported and encouraged terrorism.<sup>28</sup>

Terrorism was first experienced in its physical form in 1966. The authorities have developed methods to counter this threat and

menace for the peaceful existence of the inhabitants of the Republic.

After representations by non-White members of the Force to be involved more fully in combatting the threat of terrorism the Commissioner of Police permitted Indian policemen to join the counter insurgency operations along the northern borders.

All members of the police force receive the same training irrespective of race or rank. The training course enables them to handle any situation in the execution of their duties.

The counter insurgency units are equipped with machine guns and other automatic weapons. Attention is given to the study of terrorists weapons and their methods of use during the course.

Some of the units have already been involved in terrorist attacks and have performed their duties with great skill. South Africa owes a debt of gratitude to the members of the South African Police who so ably, in the face of constant danger guard over, and prevent

terrorists from gaining a foothold in South Africa.<sup>29</sup>

#### 5.2.6 Special Duties

The members of the police force, besides carrying out the above functions, undertake inquiries on behalf of other government departments, act as public prosecutors in criminal courts in most rural areas of the Republic and South West Africa. In some instances they serve as assistant clerks of the court, excise officers, immigration officers, wardens and revenue officers. Further, they assist in the compilation of the voter's rolls, the registration of births and deaths, and act as lay (health) inspectors, inspectors of vehicles and of licences, postal agents, pass issuers, health officers, meteorological observers, census enumerators and mortuary attendants, together with various other duties extraneous to the police functions.<sup>30</sup>

#### 5.3 The Organisation of the South African Police Force

As was pointed out in Chapter 3, the purpose of any organisation is to create an instrument

that will help the members of that organisation to realise a set of goals or objectives. It is difficult to establish a set of rules for police organisations because there are too many factors involved for example, the size of the department, the incidence of crime, the type of crimes committed and the demand for non-criminal services.<sup>31</sup>

5.3.1 The hierarchy of the South African Police Force is as follows : At the head is the Minister of Police. Subject to the direction of the Minister, the Commissioner of the South African Police Force has the command superintendance and control of the Force.<sup>32</sup> Under the Commissioner are two Chief Deputy Commissioners. One being the Chief Deputy Commissioner of the Uniform Branch and the other the Chief Deputy Commissioner of the Criminal Investigation Branch.

To accomplish those functions set out in the Police Act, Act No. 7 of 1958 there is decentralisation based on functional and geographical factors and division by activity.

### 5.3.2 Decentralisation

The Republic and South West Africa are divided into 20 South African Police Divisions namely: Border, Natal, Northern Cape, East Rand, Eastern Province, Northern Orange Free State, Northern Transvaal, Eastern Transvaal, Orange Free State, Port Natal, South West Africa, South West Districts, Boland, Far North, West Rand, Western Province, Western Transvaal, Northern Natal, Witwatersrand and Soweto.

On 1 October 1975 the Transkei police took full control of police activities in the homeland.<sup>33</sup>

Each division has its own head quarters with at least an administrative section under the command of the Divisional Commissioner. The executive section is subject to the command of the divisional commissioner and is under the control of the divisional criminal investigation officer.<sup>34</sup>

Each division in turn is divided into a number of police districts. Each police

district is under the command of a district commandant. He is assisted by a senior district officer who is mainly concerned with administrative and personnel matters. The district criminal investigation officer is concerned with the investigation and combatting of crime.<sup>35</sup> A district commandant generally holds the rank of Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel or Major.

A police district is again divided into a number of South African Police Station areas under the command of a station commander. The station commander may hold the rank of Major, Captain, Lieutenant, Warrant-Officer or Sergeant.

The urban and sub-urban police station areas are again divided into a number of beats or patrol areas.<sup>36</sup> At this level the various functional units for the prevention of crime, protection services, crime investigations and the combatting of crime is to be found.

This method of division has been adopted for purposes of effective control and administration over the Republic, South West Africa and over

its personnel. The Police in South West Africa became an independent Force on 1.7.81. There are a number of specialised units established for the investigation and combatting of crime. These include inter alia, the drugs investigation unit, the unit for investigation of commercial crimes and the gold and diamond sections. The activities of these specialised units cover the area of an entire police division or a few police divisions or may even operate on a country wide basis.

### 5.3.3 Division by Activity

All members of the South African Police belong to one of the two main branches namely: the Uniform or the Detective Branch.

#### 5.3.3.1 Uniform Branch

The members of this Branch are dressed in uniform while on duty. They are mainly concerned with protective and preventive functions which on account of this very nature calls for uniforms so that members can easily be recognised. The Uniform Branch consists of the following personnel: policemen, station commanders, district commanders, divisional commissioners, deputy

and assistant commissioners and the Commissioner.<sup>37</sup>  
 The functions of this Branch has been discussed  
 in the previous section of this chapter.

#### 5.3.3.2 Personnel Administration

The head of this section is the Deputy Commissioner. Matters like recruitment, enlistment, transfers, discipline, examinations, appointments, decorations, and discharges are given attention. This section deals with all matters pertaining to personnel and administration excluding matters concerning officers.

#### 5.3.3.3 Spiritual Guidance

The Police Force now has its own chaplains. These chaplains work in close co-operation with local ministers and cater for the needs of the Force in spiritual matters. The chief chaplain is required to establish, organise and control the chaplain corp, to see to the efficient spiritual ministrations and the moral welfare of all its peoples and to guide the welfare workers of the department.<sup>38</sup>

#### 5.3.3.4 Inspectorate

At the head of the Inspectorate is a Deputy

Commissioner who is assisted by various assistant commissioners. They have numerous duties to perform which include inter alia, investigation and reporting of matters, concerning personnel and other general matters affecting the Force, to make a study of personnel utilisation, arrange and present functional in-service training courses and to compile the annual budget.

#### 5.3.3.5 Training of Members

The head of this section is the assistant commissioner. The activities of this section includes inter alia, basic training the supervision and control of in-service training courses, courses for the promotion of members to commissioned ranks, and it renders ceremonial escort duties.

#### 5.3.3.6 Financial Administration

The Force Administration Section is divided into two main sub-organisations namely: miscellaneous force administration and financial administration. The latter is responsible inter alia, for the annual budget, payment of salaries, collection of public monies, rentals for police buildings

and residences, medical and dental accounts, subsidies and miscellaneous claims.

#### 5.3.3.7 General Administration

General Administration falls under the Force Administration Section which attends to matters relating inter alia, to Bantu Administration and development, Community Development, general police protection, departmental manuals, administration of police services and duties, history and cultural matters of the Police Force.

#### 5.3.3.8 Quartermaster

The Quartermaster is responsible for the supply and maintenance of transport, provisions and equipment. The staff is stationed mainly in Pretoria and consists of the administrative section, the artisan, mechanical and radio-technical sections. The Mechanical School at Benoni where White and Non-White members of the Force are trained annually in driving, maintenance and care of police vehicles fall under the control of the Quartermaster.<sup>39</sup>

#### 5.3.4 Division of Activity : Criminal Investigation

A detective must first undergo training at

a South African Police Training College and thereafter perform duty in the Uniform Branch to gain the necessary experience. Candidates for the detective branch are called up in groups to attend courses designed for them. Training is given over a three month period by means of lectures, films, demonstrations etcetera.<sup>40</sup> On completion, policemen serve a 12 month probationary period.

The Section of the Chief Deputy Commissioner (Criminal Investigation Branch) is situated at headquarters in Pretoria. This section is subdivided into the following five large sub-organisations each under the command of a Deputy Commissioner holding the rank of either Major-General or Brigadier assisted by a number of assistant commissioners:

#### 5.3.4.1 Internal Security

The Internal Security of the Republic and of South West Africa is the responsibility of the Security Branch, as stated in section 5 of the Police Act, Act No. 7 of 1958. The Branch is responsible for the preservation of the security of the State.<sup>41</sup> Members of both the Uniform and Detective branches

who show an interest in, and have an aptitude for this specialised work may be absorbed into this Branch. Each member is thoroughly trained for the work which he is required to do.<sup>42</sup>

#### 5.3.4.2 Investigation of Crime

Crime investigation and detective work comes under the control of one of the deputy commissioners who is assisted by many other assistant commissioners. The work of this sub-organisation include inter alia, the control and planning of all crime investigations, the organisation and control of specialised investigation units such as the investigation of murder and robbery, crime statistics, deportations, repatriations and extraditions and the administration and organisation of the South African Police Dog School at Kwaggaspoort.

#### 5.3.4.3 Dog School

Those members who are in the Uniform Branch and love animals are given the opportunity to be trained as dog handlers. The course of training lasts four months and is given at the South African Police Dog School in Pretoria.

Members who show interest in the investigation

of crimes, are experienced, and have the ability to work with dogs can be trained as tracker dog masters. Tracker dog masters are taught to search for and lift fingerprints at scenes of crimes in country districts, where local finger print experts are not available.<sup>43</sup>

#### 5.3.4.4 Crime Prevention

This sub-organisation is controlled by a deputy commissioner. The following primary functions are performed: ordinary patrols, radio patrols, guard duties, and other such duties for the prevention of crime and the protection of life and property. The control and organisation of all police reservists is another important duty.

There is also a section for special operations such as guarding the borders of the Republic and the prevention and combating of crime on a large scale. Trained units are placed in strategic positions throughout the country mainly to prevent terrorists and organised criminal gangs, to suppress and repress internal rebellions, riots, the guarding of certain key points, etcetera.

#### 5.3.4.5 The South African Criminal Bureau

The South African Criminal Bureau has its head office in Pretoria. It is one of the many cogs in the vast machine involving the investigation, prevention and detection of crime in the Republic and South West Africa.

It is the office where records in respect of sentences and photographs of persons convicted, in respect of specified crimes and offences are filed. The Bureau is the training centre of the Force for finger print experts, photographers, draughtsmen, ballistic and handwriting experts as well as experts in connection with the identification of hair.

The functions of the Bureau include the following:

1. The collection and preservation of information for the identification, apprehension and supply of information concerning criminals in the Republic and neighbouring territories.
2. The supply of previous criminal history and records of arrested, convicted and suspected persons to those authorised to receive it.

3. To aid in the scientific investigation of crime in co-operation with other scientific institutions.
4. To ensure that instructions regarding the taking of finger-prints, descriptions and photographs are promptly and accurately complied with.
5. To receive and control finger-prints, photographs and other particulars.
6. To centralise, as far as possible the records of all criminals and offenders in the Republic.
7. To conduct all enquiries relating to criminals in so far as photographs, finger-prints, etcetera are concerned either from or to countries outside the Republic.

The South African Criminal Bureau is also involved inter alia with the examination of disputed documents and firearms.

#### 5.3.4.5.1 Disputed Documents

The disputed documents section of the South African Criminal Bureau was established to provide expert examination of handwriting and other documents suspected of having been forged

or altered. Items such as forged wills, cheques and threatening letters are included in the above.

A document is defined as, "any material on which marks, symbols or signs, whether visible, partly visible or invisible have been placed and which from its nature contain a meaning or message".<sup>44</sup>

The examination of documents is undertaken at the South African Criminal Bureau and at the Local Finger Print Office in Cape Town. These offices undertake the examination on a provincial and regional basis.

#### 5.3.4.5.2 Fire Arms

The most important functions of the ballistics division of the South African Criminal Bureau are the following :

1. To receive, examine and test firearms, discharged cartridge-cases, projectiles and undischarged ammunition which are suspected to have been used in criminal cases and to report on such examination.

2. To assist investigation officers with information, details and/or opinions in connection with distances, wounds, mechanical operation of fire-arms, etcetera.
3. To examine tools such as crowbars, screwdrivers, pliers and articles on which they were used and to report on such examinations.<sup>45</sup>

Although almost all the data on offenders and suspects are centralised in the Head Office of the South African Criminal Bureau in Pretoria, the Bureau is decentralised to a considerable extent into a number of Local Finger-Print Offices throughout the Republic and South West Africa.

#### 5.3.4.6 The Duties and Functions of Local Finger-Print Offices

The branch offices of the South African Criminal Bureau are situated at all the larger centres with the aim of assisting in the investigation of crime. These offices are known as Local Finger-Print Offices and are never referred to as the South African Criminal Bureau or the Bureau.

The duties of these offices, inter alia,

include the following :

1. To visit scenes of crime and search for finger-prints.
2. To compare finger-prints found at the scene of the crime with those of suspects.
3. To take photographs and prepare plans in cases of serious crimes.
4. To assist with the duplication of documents, plans and photographs in criminal cases, where necessary.
5. To give evidence in criminal cases in matters relating to finger-prints, photographs and plans.
6. To give instructions to members of the Force as may be considered necessary.
7. To restore effaced numbers on metal (etching process).
8. To perform any other duties as is indicated by the Commanding Officer of the South African-Criminal Bureau.<sup>46</sup>

The Chief concern inter alia, of Local Finger-

Print Officers, are the examination of :

5.3.4.6.1 Finger-Print and Barefoot-Prints at the Scene of the Crime

Finger-prints provide important clues in the investigation of crime. Prints can be left and found on virtually any smooth surface, for example on plastic or semi-plastic material, in a dust layer on the upper surface of the one or the other object on the scene of the crime, or even on paper surfaces. Articles on which finger-prints are left are sent to the Local Finger-Print Office for examination and identification.

5.3.4.6.2 Photography and Plan drawing

The Local Finger-Print Office plays an important role in the investigation of crime. There is no better description that can be given of the scene of a crime than a photograph or a plan drawn according to scale and containing all the important and even unimportant details. A plan and/or photograph will give a clear and true representation of the crime scene therefore during a trial it would assist the court and to make clear deductions and conclusions of what

happened and the court to come to a decision without an inspection in loco.

Photographs and/or plans are of the greatest importance in the following instances : recognition of criminals; scenes of serious crimes; position of bodies in cases of unnatural deaths; identification of bodies of unknown deceased persons; serious wounds; scenes of fires; explosions or explosives, finger-, palm- and footprints found on a scene of crime and which cannot be lifted; footmarks, fatal or very serious motor accidents; documents; unidentified stolen property; toolmark and identification parades.

#### 5.3.4.6.3 Photographs of Prisoners

Where necessary, prisoners must be photographed and the photographs preserved. It is especially of importance to obtain photographs of persons who commit crimes like fraud, embezzlement, robbery, rape, immorality, prostitution, etcetera.<sup>47</sup>

#### 5.3.4.7 The South African Police Forensic Science Laboratory

The Forensic Science Laboratory also known

as the Laboratory, resorts under the South African Criminal Bureau and is situated at 171 Jacob Maré Street, Pretoria.

The purposes of the laboratory are as follows:

1. "To institute impartial investigation into any questions submitted by members of the South African Police with regard to the investigation of crime.
2. To provide assistance during investigation at a scene of crime (especially of a serious nature) in order to provide all possible clues."

Various materials are also examined for example: glass, paint, textiles and fibres, metal, grinding powders and chemicals, precious stones and metals, money, paper, plastic materials, sticks and blunt objects, wires and ropes, hair and toolmarks. Exhibits are preferably transported to the experts by hand.<sup>48</sup>

#### 5.3.4.8 Medico-Legal Matters

Under medico-legal matters are included those aspects in which the medical and related sciences can assist the administration of justice, and

especially the police in the gathering of facts. These scientists are not detectives, they are dependent on the police for the supply of basic information and material from which an expert deduction can be made and placed before the court.

To a certain extent there will be an overlapping of functions between the various scientific institutions on which the police rely for help. An instance where overlapping does occur is in the case of hair, the examination can be done by the South African Criminal Bureau, and the Pathological Laboratories at Durban and Cape Town as well as the South African Institute for Medical Research at Johannesburg, Port Elizabeth and Windhoek. Preference is given to the South African Criminal Bureau in such cases.<sup>49</sup>

#### 5.4 Evaluation

This chapter is evaluated in terms of the basic principles of organisation applicable to police institutions. The South African Police is typically bureaucratic in character. Bureaucratic organisations like the South African Police exist for

the purpose of realising specific aims. It is the end product of several organisational principles. The allocation of services is perhaps not always made from a purely theoretical-logical point of view nor is it based on the principle of homogeneity. In this respect other important considerations may prevail for example, the need to maintain a reasonably well balanced volume of work between commanders and sections, or the fact that one commander is perhaps better equipped or suited for a specific task than the other. This implies that all bureaucratic or semi-bureaucratic structures do not necessarily incorporate all the organisational elements discussed in chapter three of this thesis.

A bureaucratic structure does present special problems which can minimise efficiency. For example, it is insufficient for meeting the special problems policemen may have or when he fails to keep pace with the changes in the external environment. Regimentation and monotony are other hallmarks of a bureaucratic system. The constant pressure upon members to act methodi-

cally, sensibly, cautiously and in a disciplined way leads to a state of work psychosis. Policemen affected in this way may take the least time of resistance in order to avoid the unpleasant aspects of discipline.

On the positive side, a bureaucracy tends to build a reputation for constancy of action whereby a complainant can expect to receive uniform and consistent treatment. An over-emphasis of organisational principles can lead to a displacement of objectives. For example, the emphasis can shift from the primary aim, that is, the maintenance of law and order to the means of doing so (internal administrative efficiency). This would eventually result in the maintenance of law and order becoming a secondary consideration.

All organisations like the South African Police depend to some measure upon the sub-division of tasks and therefore upon a degree of specialisation in executing them for example, the Detective Branch and the Security Branch of the South African Police. This phase can be overemphasised. A problem may arise when the administration can

become so obsessed by the need for developing even higher skills through breaking down existing jobs into more highly specialised techniques that they eventually produce an organism dependent on expert operations in all its detail. Others arrive at an equally unfavourable result through the establishment of new administrative units for the performance of each new activity. In either event a dangerous situation is created when an emergency service is concerned. The important point is that whether the expert staff is on hand or not the police must act and act quickly.

It is not certain whether the problems mentioned above or other problems associated with the bureaucratic structure are experienced by the South African Police or not. The writer is of the opinion that such problems if they do exist, could affect the role of the Police and their effectiveness, hence further investigation into this problem could be a project for future research.

In conclusion the writer wishes to mention that the number of elements characteristic of a bureaucratic structure, the form they take,

and the intensity with which they occur, together determine the degree of rationality attributable to the institution and the degree to which the central principle, that is, goal attainment, is given its rightful precedence.

REFERENCES

1. Police Act, Act No. 7 of 1958, section 4 (1).
2. The South African Police Standing Orders, section 220 (1), (2) and (4).
3. Ibid., section (8).
4. Police Act, Act No. 7 of 1958, section 5.
5. General Law Amendment Act, Act No. 62 of 1966, section 22.
6. Terrorism Act, Act No. 83 of 1967.
7. Horrel, M. : "South African : Basic facts and figures." South African Institute of Race Relations, Johannesburg, 1973, pp. 20 - 22.
8. Public Safety Act, Act No. 3 of 1953.
9. Unlawful Organisations Act, Act No. 34 of 1960.
10. Cook, R.A. : "British Law Enforcement perceived through the Eyes of an American Policeman," F.B.I. Bulletin, September, 1975, Vol. 44, No. 9, p.22.
11. Arms and Ammunition Act, Act No. 75 of 1969.

12. Liquor Act, Act No. 87 of 1977.
13. The South African Police Standing Orders, section 210 (6).
14. Ibid., section 211 (1).
15. Criminal Procedure Act, Act No. 51 of 1977, section 50.
16. Ibid., section 59 (1).
17. Caldwell, R. : Criminology, The Ronald Press Company, New York, 1956, p.287.
18. Criminal Procedure Act, Act No. 51 of 1977, section 35 (3).
19. The South African Police Standing Orders, section 220 (8).
20. Liquor Act, Act No. 30 of 1928, section 173.
21. Brochure : The South African Police as a Career, p.22.
22. Ibid., p22.
23. du Toit, P.J.: "The role of the Police as a Crime Preventive Force," Nicro

Journal, Vol. 3, No. 2, June, 1974.

24. The South African Police Standing Orders, section 210 (10).
25. Animal Protection Act, Act No. 71 of 1962, section 5 (1).
26. Children's Act, Act No. 33 of 1960, section 26 (1).
27. General Law Amendment Act, Act No. 71 of 1968.
28. Information obtained from South African Police Headquarters.
29. Department of Information : "They guard our Borders", Fiat Lux, Vol., 8, No. 7, September, 1973, p.10.
30. Information obtained from South African Police Headquarters.
31. Gocke, B.W. and : Police Sergeant's Manual, Payton, G.L. Legal Book Corporation, California, 1972, p.119.
32. Police Act, Act No. 7 of 1958.
33. The Natal Daily News : "S.A.P. hands over Police Stations to the Transkei," 1 October 1975.

34. The South African Police Standing Orders, section 12.
35. Ibid., section 14.
36. Ibid., section 204.
37. Brochure : The South African Police as a Career, pp.15-16.
38. Ibid., p.38.
39. Ibid., p.19.
40. Information obtained from South African Police Headquarters.
41. Ibid.
42. Ibid.
43. Ibid.
44. South African Police : Hints on the Investigation of Crime, Government Printer, Pretoria, pp.5-11.
45. Ibid., pp.12-13.
46. Ibid., p.13.
47. Ibid., p.15.

48. Ibid. pp.15-16.

49. Ibid. p.36.

C H A P T E R 6THE ADMINISTRATION OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN POLICE FORCE6. Police Administration

The following chapter is divided into two sections. In the first section some general aspects of police administration in South Africa is outlined and in the second section some of the administrative duties performed by Indian policemen of the Chatsworth South African Police Station are detailed.

6.1 Some General Aspects of Police Administration6.1.1 The Members of the South African Police Force

A policeman includes any commissioned officer, non-commissioned officer constable or trooper of a police force established under any law or by any body of persons to carry out any law and to observe the powers, duties and functions of the

police force in the Republic.<sup>1</sup>

The South African Police is a legally constituted police force. Every member is prima facie a servant of the State and in case of an unlawful act (delict) the State is prima facia liable. When a policeman commits an act in which he exercises personal discretion which is granted to him by the legislative authority, the State exercises no control over his acts and consequently the "master-servant" relationship is absent. In such cases the State is not civilly liable for compensation as a result of an unlawful act, but the policeman is personally liable.<sup>2</sup>

Every member of the Force is expected to exercise such powers and perform such duties which are imposed upon him by law. Further, he shall obey all lawful directions in respect of the executions of his office which he may from time to time receive from his superiors in the Force.<sup>3</sup>

The Commissioner issues orders and instructions to the members of the Force as "Standing" or "Force Orders".<sup>4</sup>

The South African Police Force is structured

as follows:

6.1.1.1 The Commissioner of the South African Police

The State President appoints by commission an officer styled the Commissioner of the South African Police.<sup>5</sup> Any power vested in the Commissioner may be exercised by any other officer of or above the rank of lieutenant-colonel, subject to his direction and designated by him.<sup>6</sup> The Commissioner shall not at any time resign from the Force without the consent of the State President.<sup>7</sup>

6.1.1.2 Commissioned Officers

All commissioned officers are appointed by the State President. A commission bears the signatures of the State President and the Minister or replicas of such signatures. It is issued by the State President.<sup>8</sup>

6.1.1.3 Divisional Commissioner

To ensure that the administration of the Force and the functions and duties of members are carried out effectively a divisional commissioner is required inter alia : to utilise the services and members to the best advantage; to remain in

contact and co-operate with other divisional commissioners; to show an active interest in the personal and general welfare of all members under his command; to hold inspections regularly and to see that police officers and stations are effectively administered and controlled; to consult and co-operate with the heads of offices of other government departments on matters concerning internal security and other matters of mutual interest; to keep in contact with farmers associations, and attend regional congresses and represent the police at meetings and other organisations of public interest; to consult with local governing bodies and leaders of various sectors of the community concerning crime, the administration of the Force and other matters of public interest.<sup>9</sup>

The powers which the Commissioner has conferred upon divisional commissioners, shall, subject to section 4 (2) of the Act and the Regulation, also be exercised by the Quartermaster, the Commanding Officers, South African Criminal Bureau, South African Police Training Colleges, South African Police Dog School, the Senior Staff Officer and

the Paymaster, Head Office, in respect of staff members serving under his command.<sup>10</sup>

#### 6.1.1.4 Divisional Criminal Investigation Officers

The divisional criminal investigation officer is, in respect of crime, responsible to the divisional commissioner and shall advise the latter on the allocation and posting of detectives in the division. Amongst his other administrative duties: he is the commanding officer of members of the detective branch, detective probationers and any other member assigned to that branch for duty and discipline; he personally supervises members and advises them in connection with the investigation of crime; he is officially responsible, assists investigating officers with advice and guidance, etcetera; he supervises the work of district as well as other detective officers, detectives and other members who investigate crime in the division; he keeps in touch and co-operates with the Attorney-General, Chief Magistrate, Chief Commissioner and officers of other state departments; and he is responsible for carrying out any duty assigned to him by the Commissioner or the Divisional Commissioner.<sup>11</sup>

#### 6.1.1.5 Divisional Inspectors

The divisional inspector is responsible to the divisional commissioner and he sees to it that the administration of the division is functioning effectively and that the executive duties are properly and effectively fulfilled. Further, to his other duties, he assists the divisional commissioner to ensure that the functions of the Force as prescribed by section 5 of the Police Act are properly planned, organised with singleness of purpose and carried out effectively. The divisional commissioner is also responsible for the prevention of crime and in this regard there is close co-operation between the divisional inspector and the divisional criminal investigation officer.

#### 6.1.1.6 District Commandants

The district commandant is the commanding officer of all members who are posted to a police district for duty and discipline. As an administrative officer he is responsible inter alia for the proper distribution of the authorised establishment, the posting of all the available members, the proper

distribution of work and the administration of such work.<sup>13</sup>

To ensure the proper administration of the Forces and the proper functioning of the members in his district he, amongst other things, utilises the services of all members to the best advantage;

Maintains a close co-operation with his district criminal investigation officer, district commandants and district criminal investigation officers of neighbouring or other districts; holds at least one parade and three surprise inspections every year of all stations in his district; visits each station at district headquarters as often as possible during the day and at night or to have such visits made by an officer; and visits the magistrates or circuit courts or to have such visits made by an officer.

Further to his numerous administrative duties, the District Commandant co-operates and, where necessary, consults with the heads of government offices in his district. He is responsible for the execution of any duty which the Commissioner or his divisional commissioner may assign to him.<sup>14</sup>

#### 6.1.1.7 Detective Officers

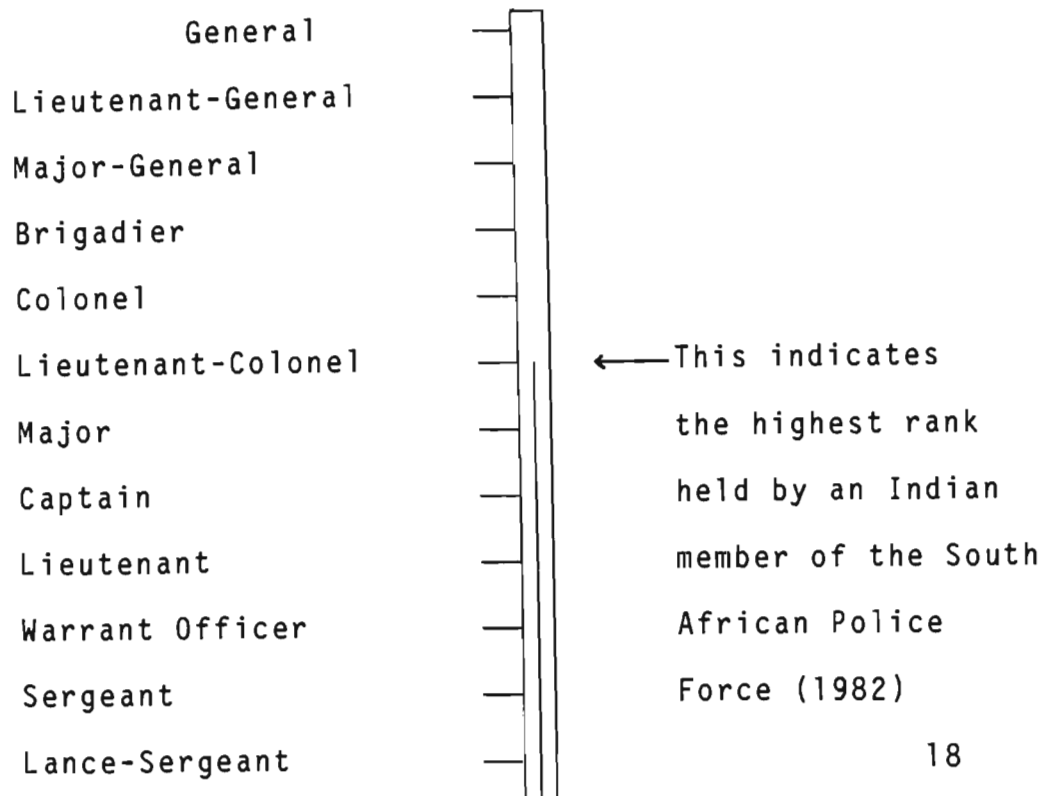
The district criminal investigation officer is the commanding officer of members of the detective branch, detective probationers and any other number or employee in the district assigned to that branch for duty or discipline.<sup>15</sup>

#### 6.1.1.8 District Officers

These are district officers who aid the district commandant in all matters of duty and carry out promptly all lawful orders and directions issued to him.<sup>16</sup>

#### 6.1.2 Ranks in the South African Police Force

Staff officers are supervisors. They are provided with rank and authority equal to their responsibility in the Force.<sup>17</sup> The chain of command with the Commissioner as the highest ranking officer is as follows:



### 6.1.3 Recruitment

The South African Police seeks to recruit the best possible applicants for its Force.<sup>19</sup> Police recruiting contingents make regular visits to various centres in the Republic where talks on careers in the South African Police are given. Film shows are given and pamphlets distributed to prospective candidates and parents.<sup>20</sup>

Educational qualifications are an important aspect for the rating of the relative capacities of the

applicants for appointment. It provides some means of comparing the individual with those who seek government employment.<sup>21</sup>

#### 6.1.4 Training

Personnel administration has moved into the positive aspect of promoting job satisfaction and efficient practices. More and more attention is now given to the training of employees. There are two objectives for this namely, to instruct the newly appointed employees in the work they are expected to perform and to teach them the methods by which the job is to be done. Training is intended to enhance the ability of the worker, and so advance the prospect of later promotion. If one wishes to acquire new skills and techniques one may make use of the educational facilities in the community.<sup>22</sup>

From 1968 policemen were granted bursary loans to study for a degree. In the same year those who wished to study for a Police Diploma were given State assistance.<sup>23</sup> The University of South African is playing an important role in this field. This institution offers degree courses in

Police Science which helps to raise the professional standards in the Force and also to educate future officers and to provide them with a solid academic background.<sup>24</sup>

#### 6.1.5 Rating

From time to time supervisors and personnel specialists are required to evaluate employee performances. The objectives of an efficiency rating are : to make sure that an employee is rendering satisfactory service in his job; and it also provides a comparable basis for judgement among individuals. The basis for comparisons is important in considering salary increases and possible promotions. Employee evaluations has to go on constantly in any administrative organisation. The quality of the work must be judged unless all personnel actions are to be based solely upon seniority.<sup>25</sup>

#### 6.1.6 Promotions and Transfers

A system for promotion is commonly recognised as an important element in personnel management. When a policy is adopted to fill higher positions from employees already within the service, the

result should then be improved morale and efficiency. Employees will then compete with one another in their desire to obtain advancement. The prospect of increased responsibility and compensation may serve as a stimulus to better performance and greater effort on the part of the worker. The employment of persons to top positions ensures experience in the direction of activities.<sup>26</sup>

Promotion in the South African Police Force for all races is based mainly on the successful participation in departmental promotion examinations as prescribed for the different branches of the Force.

The subjects include Force Administration A and B. Investigation of Crime, the two official languages namely, English and Afrikaans, Criminal Law "A", Criminal Law "B" and Criminal Procedure and Evidence.

Promotion examinations are held when warranted by the number of vacancies available.

After completion of three years service, in the case of a matriculant, or four years service in

the case of a non-matriculant, and provided he is at least 20 years old, a constable qualifies for participation in an examination to the rank of sergeant, after two years in the rank of sergeant to the rank of warrant officer and after two years in the latter rank, to the rank of lieutenant. In addition to the mentioned examination, warrant officers who must be matriculants have to undergo and pass an intensive training course before being appointed as lieutenants.

As from January, 1979, the departmental examinations have been substituted by an academic qualification in order to qualify for promotion in the South African Police Force.

The Department of National Education has instituted a National Diploma (Police Administration) for members of the South African Police.

Indian members will however, have the choice to qualify themselves for promotion either by writing the Departmental examination or the National Diploma (Police Administration).

Regardless of existing vacancies, examinations for the Diploma will take place during June and

The dual system of promotion examinations was abolished on 1. 6. 81. The National Diploma (Police Administration) is since the only form of examination.

The only form of examination.

November of each year.

The course and subjects are as follows:

- 1st year - National Certificate (Police Administration (constable to sergeant))
- 2nd year : National Higher Certificate (Police Administration) (sergeant to warrant officer) and
- 3rd year : National Diploma (Police Administration)

Subjects :

Police Administration I, II, III

Criminal Law I, II, III

Investigation of Crime I, II, III

Criminal Procedure and Evidence I, II, III

During the second year except for the subjects mentioned above, a candidate has to write either Afrikaans A or B or English A or B and during a candidate's third year he has to write the language not written in the second year. One of the two languages must be in the higher grade. In the case of the Indian he has the choice of either writing the second language or he may

write the subject Ethnology instead, but if he should choose the latter, the language taken in the second year must be in the higher grade.

The Diploma will, however, be issued to members who have a standard 10 or equivalent certificate.

After passing the first year, a constable may be considered for promotion to sergeant after completion of three years service in the case of a matriculant, or four years service in the case of non-matriculant, and provided he is at least 20 years of age. Only after being promoted to sergeant a candidate may write his second year and after passing his examination he may be considered for promotion to warrant officer after serving two years in the rank of sergeant. Only warrant Officers are allowed to participate in the final year and after obtaining the Diploma and serving two years in the rank of warrant officer a candidate may be allowed to attend the intensive training course which has to be passed before he could be appointed to the rank of lieutenant.<sup>27</sup> The periods of service in the various ranks have been changed on 1.6.81. A constable with Standard 10 may sit for the examination after 18 months service, those without Standard 10 after 2 years. A sergeant to warrant officer after 18 months and warrant officer to officer after 12 months of service.

Regardless of the fact that a member has passed any of these mentioned examinations, he has no

unqualified right to be promoted.

All promotions are subjected to selection and existing vacancies. Selection boards consisting of senior officers appointed by the Commissioner, have to enquire into the relevant merit, efficiency and suitability of all members eligible for promotion.

Members of the South African Police Force may not choose where they would like to work, but must serve the Force where they are needed most. If young constables want to change their posts after arriving at their stations, they may make such a change by means of exchange transfers at their own expense and on condition that permission has been granted.

Comprehensive adjustments have been made to the existing system of promotion in the South African Police Force. These changes are aimed at affording greater recognition by way of earlier promotions to members of the Force who have passed departmental examinations or have achieved academic qualification without sacrificing efficiency. This means that the periods in which such a

member has to serve in a rank before being considered for promotion to the next rank is being shortened. Intensive in-service training is being provided to enable members to qualify for their greater responsibility.

Further, the changes are aimed at creating a more favourable dispensation for members of the Force who do not have the ability to obtain academic qualifications or pass departmental examinations, but who are nevertheless practical, and useful policemen of great value to the Force. Members in this category may now be promoted to a higher rank without sitting for the prescribed promotion examinations. This only refers to constables and sergeants. The idea is to promote a constable to the rank of a sergeant after six years service, and a sergeant with the same number of years in that rank to the rank of a warrant officer. This does not mean that every constable or sergeant with the necessary number of years of service in his rank will be promoted. The period of promotion without examinations have also been changed as from 1.6.81. A constable with Standard 10, 3 years and those without, 5 years. Sergeant to Warrant Officer, 3 years.

The members will be subjected to a stringent selection process so that efficiency is not sacrificed. The idea is to afford those practical, experienced

and useful policemen recognition for their good services.

The changes mentioned above are aimed at identifying the talented and go-ahead member with the necessary leadership qualities at an early stage and then to train him and equip him for greater responsibility and to create an attractive career for him in order to retain his services.<sup>28</sup>

#### 6.1.7 Discipline

Discipline is the negative aspect of administrative leadership. Any administrator must give a major part of his own personal effort to evoke the best productive response from his assistants and subordinates. Always in the background, there remains the weapons of discipline as a final resort in attempting to achieve satisfactory work performance.

Discipline is a kind of administrative measure to be used sparingly and carefully. When clear and concise instructions are given, when work habits and customs are carefully stated and generally known, and when the ability and fairness of the administrator are realised, then discipline is

usually a single problem. Administrators must have disciplinary powers to perform public service properly. They must not only possess such authority but must exercise it when needed. Disciplinary action should be the final resort. It should be used when other efforts have failed.<sup>29</sup>

Discipline must be strictly maintained by all ranks of policemen. Undue familiarity on the part of a superior towards a subordinate, and vice versa, is never tolerated. Failing to obey orders is not overlooked and any disrespect shown to higher authority is instantly reported.

Since discipline depends so much on the strict and unhesitating obedience of orders, officers are expected to insist upon its being enforced. Warrant officers and sergeants are obliged to report promptly any neglect to obey orders by their subordinates.

#### 6.1.8 Personnel Records and Statistics

Personnel management is impossible without adequate records and statistics. The management must know who its employees are in terms of qualifications, job assignments, age, tenure, location and other characteristics. Such infor=

mation is needed for budgeting, planning, personnel programmes and answering misconceptions about public service. Management must have adequate personnel data but its records can also get out of hand. This is another phase of personnel work requiring constant attention.<sup>30</sup>

#### 6.1.9 Rewarding Subordinates

Rewarding subordinates is another important aspect of administration. The executive head, by virtue of his authority, appoints commissioned officers to the Force. Their duties and functions are set out in the citation they receive.

#### 6.1.10 Decorations

The Commissioner of the South African Police may with the approval of the Minister of Police award to a member of the Force monetary or other award for extraordinary diligence or exertion in the performance of his duties. The State President may institute and create decorations and medals, and also bars, clasps and ribbons in respect of such decorations and medals, which may be awarded by him or the Minister, to any person who is, or was a member of the Force, for exceptional services

rendered to the Force for example:

1. The South African Police Cross for Bravery.
2. The South African Police Star for Distinguished Leadership.
3. The South African Police Star for Distinguished Service.
4. The South African Police Star for Outstanding Service.
5. The South African Police Star for Merit.
6. The South African Police Star for Faithful Service.
7. The South African Police Medal for Faithful Service
8. The South African Police Medal for Combatting Terrorism.

#### 6.1.11 Forfeiture

The award of a decoration or medal may be cancelled, annulled or declared forfeited for the following reasons:

- a) if the person to whom the award was made deserts from the Police Force or is discharged or dismissed because of misconduct.
- b) if he is found guilty of treason, crimen laesae majestatis, sedition or any offence, or

- c) if he is found guilty of any other offence of a dishonest or disgraceful nature.

When a decoration or medal is cancelled, annulled or forfeited it must be returned to the Commissioner of the South African Police immediately.<sup>31</sup>

#### 6.1.12 Commendations

Members of the Force are commended for outstanding devotion to duty, courage and perseverance in the performance of their duties.<sup>32</sup>

#### 6.1.13 Resignation, Dismissal and Discharge

The Regulations for the South African Police section 15 (1) states:

Subject to the provisions of the Government Service Pension Act, 1955 (Act No. 58 of 1955), and sections three, eight, ten and seventeen of the Act, a member may be discharged or dismissed from the Force -

- a) on account of continued ill-health if, in the opinion of the Commissioner, he is mentally or physically unfit to perform all or any of his functions;
- b) because of the abolition of his post or any reduction or reorganisation or readjustment

- of the Force;
- c) if, for reasons other than his own unfitness or incapacity, his discharge will promote efficiency or economy in the Force or will otherwise be to the benefit or in the interest of the Force;
  - d) on account of his unfitness to carry out his duties or his incapacity to do so efficiently;
  - e) on account of voluntary resignation"; and
  - f) any member other than a commissioned officer, in the case of an Indian may, with the approval of the Commissioner, purchase his discharge for the following amounts:-  
R2-00 for each unexpired calendar month of services or portion thereof during the first year of service.

R2-00 during any subsequent year of service in lieu of the statutory notice as prescribed by this subregulation.

## 6.2 The Chatsworth South African Police Station - Administration

The discussion below is an attempt to show

the role of Indian Policemen employed at the Chatsworth South African Police Station which is manned completely by Indian personnel. The station comprises of approximately 110 members ranging in rank from constable to lieutenant. This station serves a population of over 300,000 people.

The number of members who are allotted specific duties at the station cannot be accurately determined. Hence, for example, the number of members on hospital guard may vary from one to three depending on the prevailing circumstances. (See Diagram 1)

#### 6.2.1 The Working Week

A full five day week of forty hours in the Force is impossible. The following system has been adopted where and when possible according to prevailing conditions. In purely administrative offices, the staff works from 08h00 to 16h30 with a lunch break from 13h00 to 13h30. Administration duties are closely related to executive duties, where the administrative staff render services to the public

on Saturdays. The staff is divided into not more than five groups. Each group works at least one out of every five Saturdays from 08h00 to 12h00.<sup>33</sup>

#### 6.2.2 Attendance Register

An attendance register in the prescribed form is kept at the station. At the start of each fortnight the names of all the members are entered in the register. The times of arrival and departure of each member is entered each day, followed by his initials in the relevant columns. The attendance register is left in charge, by the commander, under the personal supervision of a warrant officer or sergeant. It is inspected regularly by the commanding officer of the station or another officer delegated by him. Action is taken in any case of habitual unpunctuality.<sup>34</sup>

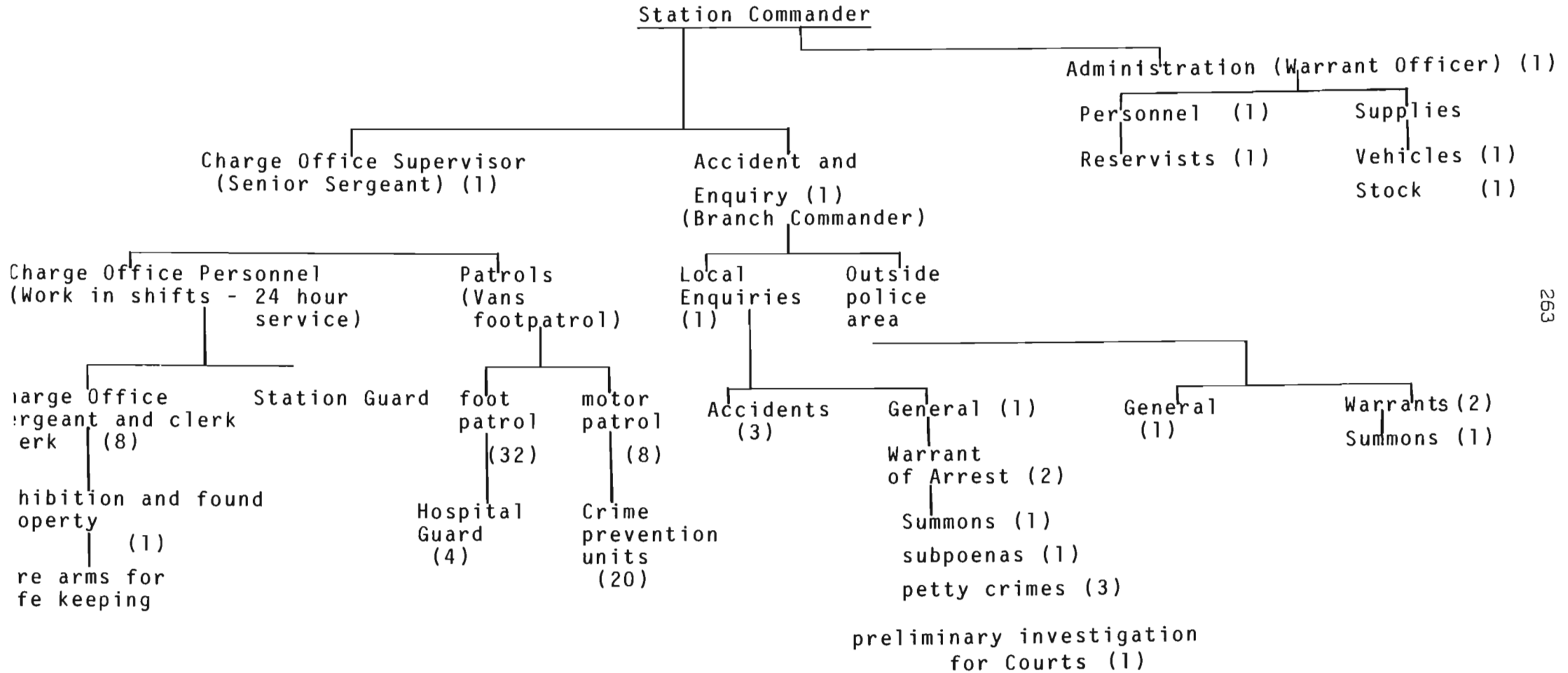
#### 6.2.3 Shifts

The Chatsworth Police Station provides a twenty hour charge office and outside service. The staff is divided into four groups. Over a period of twenty four hours, three groups

THE DISTRIBUTION OF STAFF AT THE CHATSWORTH SOUTH AFRICAN POLICE STATION

P E R S O N N E L

(Diagram 1)



263

N.B. : The number appearing in brackets refer to the number of policemen allotted to that duty

will work a shift of eight and a quarter hours. The fourth group has a rest day. This means that in every eight days, each group normally works six days with two rest days that is, twenty four shifts of eight and a quarter hours each in a cycle of thirty two days.<sup>35</sup>

#### 6.2.4 Staff Responsibilities of Members at the Chatsworth Police Station

The staff is divided and allotted duties as follows:

##### 6.2.4.1 Administrative Staff

At the head of the Administrative staff is the station commander. He has a clerk and an assistant, who is an officer, and is second in command, a filing clerk and his assistant and the typist.

The duties of this staff is to attend to correspondence, dockets, exhibits, staffing problems, lost and found property, enquiries from head office, reorganisation of staff and duties of member policemen. The station commander performs duties such as general supervision, investigations relating to boards of

enquiries and for injuries sustained by members.

#### 6.2.4.2 Charge Office Staff

A charge office staff consists of a sergeant and a charge office reserve. His duty is to take charge of the station when the commander is absent. He has in his possession the keys to the cells, lock ups and safe keys. His other duties include inter alia, attention to complaints, acceptance and refusal of charges, to visit cells and to check on prisoners every hour and to maintain registers at the Charge Office. The charge office reserve fills in dockets and refers them to the sergeant for reading and acceptance of the charge at his discretion.

#### 6.2.4.3 Van Drivers and Van Crews

These members patrol the Chatsworth area to prevent crime. They also attend to complaints in the area. There is the usual motorised patrols equipped with two-way radios.

#### 6.2.4.4 Hospital Guard

A policeman keeps guard over a prisoner/ prisoners who may be an inmate at a hospital and usually it is at the R.K. Khan Hospital in Chatsworth. This measure is necessary to ensure the safe custody of the prisoner.

#### 6.2.4.5 Liquor and Drug Squad

The Liquor and Drug Squad is a specialised unit. Its main function is to visit shebeens, trap shebeen keepers and arrest drug pedlars operating in the area. To perform this function the uniformed policemen wear civilian clothing.

#### 6.2.4.6 Enquiry Staff

The Enquiry Staff is responsible for investigation dockets, crimes of a minor nature such as common assault, malicious damage to property where the nature of the damage is under R200, execution of warrants, summons and subpoenas, and to co-operate with other stations in their investigations.

#### 6.2.4.7 Accident Staff

The members of this staff specialise in the investigation of all accidents.

#### 6.2.4.8 Court Orderly

A court orderly performs the following duties at the Chatsworth Magistrate Court or at any other court when called upon to do so: he takes the necessary dockets to court daily, obtains the result of the cases, hands in exhibits in court, and pays in admissions of guilt. Being a qualified policeman, the Court Orderly performs other duties also which may be allocated to him by the station commander.

#### 6.2.4.9 Convict Guard

The convict guard is also a policeman who takes charge of convict labour.<sup>36</sup>

#### 6.2.4.10 The Section Sergeant

The section sergeant for each relief or shift is placed in charge of all members doing outside duties. Amongst his various responsibilities are : to instruct members under his

command in the nature of their functions and duties, to train the young and inexperienced members, and to keep a vigilant eye on them when they perform beat duty. The sergeant remains on duty with the members of the relief during fixed hours.<sup>37</sup>

#### 6.2.5 Other Personnel

##### 6.2.5.1 Commanders:all ranks

The main duty of commander is to supervise police activities in connection with the investigation of crimes in the station area in close co-operation with the station commander. His other duties include: checking of case dockets, suspect dockets, inquest dockets, and the compilation of daily crime returns. The commander works in close co-operation with magistrates, Bantu Affairs Commissioners and other officials of government departments.

##### 6.2.5.2 Warrant Officers and Sergeants

Warrant officers and Sergeants work closely with members in the lower ranks, guiding them

and also with a view to their promotion.<sup>38</sup>

#### 6.2.5.3 Constables

Constables are placed under the control of a senior member, but they are frequently permitted to act on their own initiative. Their object is to be helpful to the public, to restore order in difficult situations and to act with promptness and firmness.<sup>39</sup>

#### 6.2.5.4 Investigating Officers

Investigating officers perform duties without constant supervision, therefore a high measure of discipline and faithful compliance to instruction is necessary.<sup>40</sup>

#### 6.2.6 Maintenance of Discipline

Any member of the South African Police Force may be found guilty of an offence and be dealt with in accordance with the provisions contained in Chapter 2 of the Police Act, Act No. 7 of 1958.

#### 6.2.7 Clerical Work

A large volume of clerical work is done by

policemen. Some of the registers that must be kept are : The Information Book, Pocket Book, First Information of Crime, The Occurrence Book, Case Docket, Lost, Stolen, Found Property and Enquiry Register, Case Register, Register of persons who have to report to the Police, and the Crime Register.

#### 6.2.7.1 Information Book

The Information Book is kept for matters which have to be conveyed to the members who would be parading for duty. This book is used for the information of police witnesses, dates on which cases are set down for trial and generally as a means of promulgating official information or notices and calling attention to any particular matter.<sup>41</sup>

#### 6.2.7.2 Pocket Book

Every member below the rank of Officer keeps an official book S.A.P. 206 which he must always have in his possession while on duty. This book serves to be a personal duty and assignment record to show all police work done by the member.

Those aspects of duty which are recorded in this book include leaving beat or duty area; deviations from duty or patrol instructions with reasons; occurrences during patrols for example persons visited, exhibits seized and misadventure with vehicles. Assignment records are used inter alia, to show all case docket enquiries, extraneous duties, arrests made, particulars of accidents, fires, etcetra.

Since crime prevention is an important police duty, members are expected to make entries showing particulars of every action resulting in the prevention of crime such as names and addresses of persons reprimanded or reprovved by him for minor offences. Entries are also made if help was given to the public in cases of fires, floods or when dangerous animals threatened the safety of the public.

Other members such as charge office sergeants, section sergeants and others acting in a supervisory capacity make similar entries in their Pocket Book. All entries are made as completely and accurately as possible so that the extent of work done by the member, his spirit of

enterprise and measure of diligence are reflected. The entries are of a confidential nature.<sup>42</sup>

#### 6.2.7.3 First Information on Crime

When a crime is reported it is the duty of the police to track down the offender and bring him before the court and produce all the available evidence. The complainant, informants and other witnesses are interrogated. Detailed statements are taken from each person. The statement begins with the full name, residential and work addresses, telephone and identity numbers and if available the passport number of the person making the statement. If a woman makes a statement concerning a sexual offence the member taking down the statement must if possible be accompanied by a police matron or other responsible female.

The statement taken when the case is first reported forms the basis of any subsequent prosecution. Therefore, great care is taken to obtain the fullest details of the crime whilst it is still fresh in the memory.

The statements made by the informants or complainants are recorded on the First Information of Crime (S.A.P.4). In serious cases the information is taken down on the inside of the front cover of the case docket (S.A.P. 3). If a complaint is conveyed by letter, telegram or telephone, a copy of the letter is posted or attached to the S.A.P.3. form.

Hearsay or matters which are irrelevant is avoided. A statement of the facts within the complainants, informants or witnesses own knowledge which would be admissable in evidence is taken. If an offender is known and if it appears necessary a careful description of him is furnished on a form S.A.P. 55 and of any property involved on form S.A.P.11 for circulation.<sup>43</sup>

#### 6.2.7.4 The Occurrence Book

The Occurrence Book contains a complete record of the history of the station. It also serves as a control record in respect of all other registers. In it is an accurate and faithful record of all crimes and other matters of

public interest requiring investigation or attention by the police, as well as duties performed by members of the Uniformed Branch at the station. All entries are made by the charge office sergeant unless the station commander directs otherwise or which a superior officer finds necessary to make himself.

When officers, warrant officers or other members visit or inspect a station they make and sign an entry in the Occurrence Book noting the time spent on such work or inspection.

At distant headquarters there is also a police station where an officer is stationed. The entries are calculated and the book initialled and dated by the officer daily.<sup>44</sup>

#### 6.2.7.5 Case Docket

In important cases where there is likely to be a number of statements necessitating a protecting cover, a form S.A.P.3 is used for this purpose.

In petty cases offences relating to curfew regulations, drunkenness, etcetera, the only

evidence is that of a member brought in the case a Court Book S.A.P.86 is used to complete the Crime Register.

The particulars required under the headings on the case docket is entered as soon as it becomes available. Identity numbers are also recorded.

The original statement of a person lodging a complaint is recorded on S.A.P.4 in cases of petty crimes or on page 2 of the case docket in more serious cases.

The contents of each docket is divided into three subdivisions as follows:

- 6.2.7.5.1 Clip "A" The First Information on Crime (F.I.C.) contains inter alia, all statements made by the complainants and witnesses, reports of analysts, applications for a warrant and generally all documents that may be of value to the State Prosecutor in presenting his case, is placed in this clip.
- 6.2.7.5.2 Clip "B" contains inter alia, all correspondence in connection with the case, and

reports for the Board of Visitors (Prisons). All documents filed here are numbered as B1, B2, B3 etcetera in the order in which they are filed.

6.2.7.5.3 Clip "C" This is the Investigation Diary. All documents in clips "A", "B" or "C" bear the name of the station and the number of the Crime Register in which the case is registered. A prosecutor should be able to present his case without reference to Clips "B" or "C" which are only intended for the information of the police.<sup>45</sup>

6.2.7.6 The Investigation Diary

This diary holds the complete record of all work put into the case and serves as an index to all documents contained in the case docket. An inspecting officer should be able to follow the investigation without any difficulty and to satisfy himself that all reasonable steps were taken to bring the case to a successful conclusion. Reference to each statement and to all other documents in the case docket is made in the diary opposite the entry dealing

with it. Everything done in connection with the case is entered briefly in this diary with as little delay as possible.

The names and addresses of witnesses or of persons who have supplied information to the police is carefully recorded. This entry is signed by the member who obtained the first information. The diary will show whether use was made of informers or any other person. If statements are of evidential value they are filed in the case docket.<sup>46</sup>

#### 6.2.7.6.1 The closing of Case Dockets

The Divisional Commissioner by virtue of his office is responsible for the investigation of crime.

In closing case dockets members are to ensure that all possible sources of investigation have been explored and cases properly investigated. It is the duty of the police to place all possible facts at the disposal of the Attorney General or State Prosecutor so that they may give a just decision.

Cases which cannot be sent for trial are closed by an officer under one of the following headings:

1. Withdrawn

As an example, in a trivial case a complainant may be allowed to withdraw a charge not yet referred to the State Prosecutor. On no account should the police suggest to a complainant that he should withdraw a charge.

2. Undetected

For example, if investigations have failed to disclose the offender and it is clear that the offence was actually committed, the case docket is closed as undetected.

3. False

This term is used when the investigation clearly discloses that no offence had been committed for example, stock reported stolen may have died from disease.

Those dockets in which the investigations have been successfully completed but in which

criminal proceedings were not instituted, because the accused persons may have been killed by the police on arrest, or by suicide or if they have already been sentenced or are juveniles then such files are not closed as "undetected" or "withdrawn".<sup>47</sup>

6.2.7.7 Lost, Stolen or Found property S.A.P.11(a), 11(b) and Enquiry Register

Particulars regarding identifiable lost or stolen property are entered on one of these forms. Particulars of lost, stolen or found cameras or photographic equipment bearing an identification number are forwarded to the Divisional Commissioner in Johannesburg.

Particulars of lost or stolen cameras, etcetera which have been recovered may likewise be reported to the Divisional Commissioner in Johannesburg. Persons reporting the loss of property are carefully questioned with a view of discovering any information relating to distinctive marks such as initials, numbers, etcetera.<sup>48</sup>

#### 6.2.7.8 Case Register S.A.P.256

Every member who is employed full-time in investigation duty keeps a case register in which particulars of all cases, enquires and inquests received by him for investigation are recorded.

When all entries have been fully written up, the member concerned will hand it over in exchange for a new one. The responsible commander will then file it with the case control register after it has been closed by an officer.<sup>49</sup>

At stations where there is a gaol, persons who are charged and detained are sent there on an order (S.A.P.82) issued under section 27(2) of the Prisons Act, Act No. 8 of 1959 for detention pending their appearance in court rather than be kept at the station, unless it is a distance away to the gaol, the lateness of the hour, or for some other sufficient reason be more economical or more convenient to keep them at the station.<sup>50</sup>

6.2.7.9 Register of persons who have to report to the Police

A register is kept at the police station of persons who are:

- i) for security reasons are under arrest;
- ii) are on bail; and
- iii) for any other reason have to report to the police for a specified period.

The charge office sergeant makes entries in the Occurrence Book as well as in the Register mentioning the date and time on which the person reported. This Register is checked daily before 09h00 by the station commander or an officer if there is one at the station. If a person does not report to the police the matter is immediately investigated. If a person is required to report to the police for security reasons, the member in charge of the security police is immediately notified.<sup>51</sup>

6.2.7.10 Crime Register

The Former Registers R C I (Register of Crimes Investigated) and R C A (Register of Crimes

Accepted) has now been replaced by the Crime Register. All those offences which are reported for further investigation, those cases coupled with immediate arrest and all cases from which prosecution will result are entered in the Crime Register.

The following information is recorded in the Crime Register in the columns indicated:

Occurrence Book Reference Number (Column 1).

When an act, proclamation, ordinance or by-law has been contravened, the number, year, section and a brief description of the crime is given for example: Act 30/1928/166 (i) (i) - drunkenness. To enable station commanders to take measures for the prevention of crime on the basis of a crime chart, the date, time and place where the offence was committed is indicated in Column 2. The description of offences in the Crime Register is given in accordance with the description prescribed in the code list of offences (Column 3)

The name and address of the complainant or

particulars of the police official who lodged the complaint or effected the arrest is entered in Column 4.

The member who is investigating the case signs his name in Column 5. At larger stations where this procedure is impracticable or difficult to enforce the commanders of the investigation or enquiry units sign their names in Column 5. In cases of petty offences where no further investigation is necessary for example in trespass or drunkenness the column is left open.

The charge office sergeant enters the name of the accused, date on which the accused is charged, the Occurrence Book number and if applicable the Cell Register number, Bail Receipt number, number of Warning Notice and the number of Written Notice in Column 6.

The Crime Register is important to the criminologists as crime statistics are compiled from this Register.

#### 6.2.7.11 Crime Statistics

The police become acquainted with crime stati-

statistics in two ways, namely, through a complaint made by a member of the public and then investigated by them. They have knowledge of a very large number of offences because they are the protectors of life and property including the property of the State. They are also in daily contact with crime and criminals. Police statistics include all crimes known to the police; the number of cases investigated; the number of arrests made; the number of warnings given; the number summoned before the court and full particulars of the person concerned.<sup>52</sup>

To carry out their duty efficiently the police must fill in registers and forms which helps them to determine the extent and cause of crime. The most important registers and forms completed by the South African Police are the Occurrence Book (O.B.); the Crime Register; Crime Return S.A.P.6 and a Criminal Return (Statistical Return) on form 08/01.

The Bureau of Census and Statistics supply the police with the necessary forms (08/01) which

must be completed and submitted to the Bureau of Census and Statistics weekly. All the completed forms are carefully checked. If forms are incorrectly, indistinctly or incompletely filled they are sorted and returned to their respective police stations for correction.

The Bureau is also responsible for the elaboration and publication of crime statistics in South Africa.

The headquarters of the South African Police also receive annual returns from all stations in the Republic for administrative purposes. Completed forms are submitted by the police to headquarters monthly. These forms have to reach police headquarters within fifteen days after the last day of the following month.

Annual crime figures are sent directly to police headquarters at the end of each calendar year and with the help of this information the Commissioners' Annual Report is prepared.<sup>53</sup>

A discussion of police Administration will not be complete without discussing the importance

of morale in the organisation.

#### 6.2.7.12 Morale

This term can be defined as a person's determination to succeed in the purpose for which he is trained or for which his organisation exists. It is a state of mind with reference to courage, zeal, confidence or similar qualities; it is esprit de corps. Morale is to the mind what "condition" is to the body; it is the fitness of the mind of the task at hand. It is the tenacity to stick to the job without tiring, to hold on without breaking of spirit, it is the staying power and the strength to resist mental infection which fear, discouragement and fatigue bring with them; it is the manifestation of perpetual ability to come back with fitness and readiness to act. Good morale is the state of mind and the will power to get the most from the equipment available, to perform a job with the greatest effect, to take set backs with the least depression, and to hold out for the longest time.

1. Good Morale

Good morale stimulates persistence, energy and initiative, encourages patience and is vital to police work; a policeman needs a strong spirit and a strong will power to accomplish his objectives, because he has many daily setbacks and discouragements. Human beings do not exert themselves to the limit; their natural "reservoirs of power" are tapped by the proper sort of mental stimulation. Effectiveness means power of accomplishment. With 100 men a depreciation of morale by 25 per cent is equivalent to a loss of a quarter of the command.<sup>54</sup>

2. The Purpose of Building Morale

The purpose of building morale is : to make men more efficient, to create a discipline that is voluntary and to have natural enthusiasm, and to stimulate the minds and wills of men towards desired ends. It is calculated to bring out, encourage and develop the praise. Morale aims to stimulate and help the weak, direct the strong, correct the erring, educate the misin-

formed and further encourage the successful. It brings enjoyment to work and pride in accomplishment. It is designed to take men's thoughts away from their troubles. Above all its primary purpose is to strike at any possible source of inefficiency and disorder and thereby prevent conditions that result in a state of mind wherein the individual is willing to commit offences against the rules and regulations.

### 6.3 Conclusion

If there is an over emphasis of organisational processes in the formal structure it could lead to the displacement of objectives. The emphases would then move from the primary aim i.e. the maintenance of order to the means of doing so i.e. internal administrative efficiency. This effect becomes more pronounced when functionaries are withdrawn from line units to reinforce administrative units. The institution could then degenerate into a "paper organisation" in which the primary aim is hampered by red tape.

When administrative processes are over emphasised it could perhaps, lead to excessive conformity to rules. Rules and regulations should be relative to the primary aim. Excessive conformity can lead to a situation in which the rules and regulations are given such priority that there is no possibility of meeting the needs of most of the clientele and the subordinate members of the organisation.<sup>55</sup>

The hierarchical structure exists mainly for the purpose of maintaining discipline therefore relationships are depersonalised. Because contact between subordinates and seniors occur mainly in terms of rules and regulations, mutual relationships are impersonal. Personal relationships are reduced to a minimum and it could undermine authority and upset discipline. Impersonality also leads to conflict with the clientele. The influence of the impersonal atmosphere created by the authority structure leads to an actual or apparent domineering attitude towards the clientele.

In most work situations direct control is impossible. This means that in addition to rules and regulations there must be some means of judging the quality of the work done, or the economy with which energy is being utilised. Therefore indirect-control occurs mainly in the form of reports and inspections. Reporting can be both qualitative and quantitative. From the qualitative point of view reports are concerned with the nature of quality of services performed. The quantitative aspects relate to the extent of the services. Reports are valuable because they help to determine whether the quality of completed works conforms to the expected standard; whether the members of staff are keeping up to the standards required at the various hierarchical levels and whether kinds and quantities of work are being evenly distributed in the various units. Records also provide opportunities for correcting deviations and solving problems at an early stage. Written reports also form a permanent historical record of the institution's

activities.<sup>56</sup>

It is difficult to preserve objectivity when making a report. It is a subjective process. The person concerned is obliged to give an account of himself and of the activities in which he has directly been involved. Therefore reports are often wholly devoted to self justification and do not provide that honest and objective reflection of facts or events which is their true purpose. Because of this subjective element, reports should not be blindly accepted and acted upon for control purposes. The principle that applies here is whether or not the report will promote the process of control.<sup>57</sup>

Objective reporting and a centralised record system are the joint bases of qualitative police administration. Centralisation provides an overall picture of activities and facilitates the co-ordination of line functions.

It is important to note that formal administrative arrangements in police institutions

are mainly aimed at the effective utilisation and manipulation of manpower.

REFERENCES

1. Criminal Procedure Act, Act No. 56 of 1955.
2. Police Act, Act No. 7 of 1958, section 6.
3. Ibid., section 6 (1).
4. South African Police Regulations, section 6 (2).
5. Police Act, op cit., section 3 (1).
6. Ibid., section 4 (2).
7. Ibid., section 8 (2).
8. Ibid., section 3 (1), (1A).
9. South African Police Regulations, section 11 (2).
10. Ibid., section 11 (11).
11. Ibid., section 12.
12. Ibid., section 13.
13. Ibid., section 14 (1), (3a).
14. Ibid., section 14.
15. Ibid., section 15 (1).

16. Ibid., section 16.
17. Sullivan, J.L. : op. cit., p. 185.
18. Regulations for the South African Police published under Government Notice R203, of 14th February, 1964, Regulation 8 (1).
19. Millet, J.D. : Management in the Public Service, McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, 1954, p. 316.
20. Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the year ended 1953, p. 1.
21. Millet, J.D. : op. cit., p. 314.
22. Ibid., p. 322.
23. Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the period 1 July, 1968 to 30 June, 1969, p. 4.
24. Department of Information : "Police Science Degree", The South African Digest, 17th October, 1975, p. 13.
25. Millet, J.D. : op. cit., pp. 324-325.
26. Ibid., p. 325.

27. Information from South African Police Headquarters, Pretoria.
28. Ibid.
29. Ibid., pp. 329 - 333.
30. Ibid., p. 337.
31. The Government Gazette: No. R 1035 of 18th May, 1979.
32. Annual Report of the Commissioner South African Police for the year ended 30 June, 1974.
33. South African Police Standing Orders, section 134.
34. Ibid., section 135.
35. Ibid., section 134.
36. Information from Senior Sergeant Jalarur.
37. South African Police Standing Orders, section 205.
38. Ibid., section 20.
39. Ibid., section 21.
40. Ibid., section

41. Ibid., section 222.
42. Ibid., section 223.
43. Ibid., section 303.
44. Ibid., section 304.
45. Ibid., section 307.
46. Ibid., section 308.
47. Ibid., section 309.
48. Ibid., section 312.
49. Ibid., section 314.
50. Ibid., section 317.
51. Ibid., section 332.
52. Van der Walt, P.J. : 'n Sociologiese Klassifikasie van Misdaad, Nasionale Handeldrukking Bpk., Elsie's Rivier, 1964, p. 125.
53. Ibid., p. 160.
54. Gocke, B.W. and Payton G.L. : Police Sergeant's Manual, Legal Book Corporation, California, 1972, p. 221.

55. Van Heerden, T.J. : Introduction to Police Science, University of South Africa, Pretoria, 1976, Chapter 6.
56. Ibid.
57. Ibid.

CHAPTER 7FIELDS OF OPERATION IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN POLICE FORCE7. Law Enforcement, Specialisation in the South African Police Force and Police Reservists

The activities of the South African Police Force in terms of the basic objectives of law enforcement must apart from the more administrative duties, also be evaluated in terms of the executive nature thereof.

The discussion in this chapter will therefore deal with the fields of operation of the South African Police by analysing firstly, law enforcement activities, and secondly, the nature of the executive services with reference to the secondary and primary activities.

7.1 Law Enforcement

R.S. Bunyard<sup>1</sup> states that the police are the instrument for enforcing the rule of

law; they are the means by which civilised society maintains order, that people may live safely in their homes and go freely about their lawful business. Basically, their task is the maintenance of peace- that is, the preservation of law and order. Without this there would be anarchy.

Such a statement is useful for giving a general picture of the role of the police in a civilised country, but it lacks definition. For instance, the police alone cannot enforce the rule of law; it requires basic acceptance on the part of the community that they will abide by the laws of the country.<sup>2</sup>

The "rule of law" can only operate in a country if there are a number of factors at work:

1. The police must enforce the law to an acceptable degree, relative to the nature of the offence. A higher level of enforcement is expected for an offence like murder than for speeding in a car.
2. An independent judiciary must apply the laws in such a way that respect for the law is

maintained and people are induced to obey.

3. There must be a general acceptance on the part of the population that the laws are necessary, that they should be obeyed, and that sanctions should be applied against people who break them.
4. There must be a government that makes practicable laws, abides by those laws and endorses the need for the acceptance of them by all sections of the community.

The police must be seen as part of the system for maintaining law and order, albeit an important part.

The enforcement of the law to the extent that no crimes are committed is not possible; there will always be crime. The extent of crime and its nature will affect the ability of people to "live safely in their homes and go freely about their lawful business," and feel able to do so in safety.

The police must enforce the law to ensure

that there is a high degree of obedience to it. The people must also feel free from the fear of criminals. It is perfectly possible to have a period during which the probability of any citizen being the victim of crime is no higher than at any other time, yet people feel less safe.

Policing must provide an aura of security - people must not only actually be safe from attack but they must also feel safe from attack those two things are not the same. It is perfectly feasible to be safe but feel threatened and to be threatened yet feel safe, it depends on the awareness of the true facts.

If the police are to do their job, they must not only enforce the law but they must also create a general awareness that the law is enforced.

To enforce the law effectively, the function of the South African Police can be divided on functional grounds into various divisions for specific operations:

1. Administration, which is discussed in Chapter 6 of this thesis; and
2. The Executive Services which inter alia, include:
  - i) Primary Services, and
  - ii) Secondary Services of the South African Police.

#### 7.2. Executive Services

The Executive Services can be divided into firstly, the Primary Services which is mainly concerned with the activities of the Uniform and Detective Services as related to crime prevention, protective services and crime investigation. Secondly, the secondary services centre mainly around the activities of the South African Criminal Bureau, the Forensic Laboratories, Security Branch and the Section responsible for the broader defence, suppression of riots and the Narcotics Bureau.

### 7.3 The Primary Services or Activities

#### 7.3.1 The Uniformed Branch

The functions of this section, in terms of the general guiding principles of the South African Police as discussed in Section B, includes prevention, protective services and preliminary investigation of crime, and arrest of offenders. Crime prevention is basically the function of the Uniformed Branch where members normally wear the police uniform when on duty. Their primary functions include protective or preventive duties.

To carry out their multifarious duties various types of patrols are organised to combat specific types of crimes. The practical application thereof in the South African Police implies that areas are patrolled as effectively as possible by means of either foot or mechanised patrol while on the beat.<sup>3</sup> Such duties include inter alia, the following :

### 1 Traffic Control

In crowded areas where there is congestion of traffic and where chaos is imminent, the police on duty is expected to find the cause and attempt to remove it.<sup>4</sup>

### 2 The Security of Property

When a patrol officer notices the doors and windows of locked premises, have been tampered, in the absence of the occupants, he makes the necessary investigations. In cases when doors and windows are not properly secured, the section sergeant is informed and the owners of the premises are notified accordingly.<sup>5</sup>

### 3 Inspections

Inspections are carried out in respect of liquor licenced premises, shebeens, inexpensive eating and boarding houses and any other premises which are likely to be used as brothels or gambling dens. Public buildings, vacant houses or houses where the occupants may have gone out on

holiday, having notified the police, and whose absence might be taken advantage of by thieves and vagrants are carefully watched by patrol officers. In addition, vehicles which are driven by suspicious persons by day or night are apprehended and questioned.<sup>6</sup>

#### 4 Animal Control

The patrolling officer pays particular attention to acts of cruelty directed towards animals, lost or strayed.

#### 5 Personal Contact

The police maintain a friendly relationship with the inhabitants of his area and acquaints himself with the appearance and habits of persons of questionable character.<sup>8</sup>

#### 6 Public Gatherings

At public gatherings the member makes his presence felt, and ensures that the public is given sufficient protection especially

on occasions like international and provincial soccer matches, boxing and wrestling tournaments, etcetera.<sup>9</sup>

#### 7 Calls for Assistance

The police are occasionally required to help the public in certain circumstances, such as in times of fires, floods and when dangerous animals threaten the lives of people.<sup>10</sup>

#### 8 Preliminary Investigations

A member of the Uniformed Branch investigates inter alia, road accidents, assaults, minor offences and serves summons.<sup>11</sup>

#### 9 Community Service

A policeman is called upon to perform many duties which do not fall within the list of job specifications, but he provides them. He may be called upon to administer first aid to accident victims or even to revive drowning victims. He may even be requested to deliver a death

message. All these are non police duties accepted by the police because there are no other governmental agency geared for the unusual or unexpected. The patrol officer is expected to consider these services as part of his normal and routine duty.<sup>12</sup>

#### 10 Information Services

The police patrol is the official guide for the area he serves. He is a goodwill ambassador. To the guest in the area, he is the direct representative of the community.<sup>13</sup>

#### 11 Collection and Preservation of Evidence

From the moment he first arrives at the scene of a crime until evidence is presented in court the patrol police man is directly involved in this process. He carefully assesses the scene when he arrives, then collects the evidence and prepares it for transportation and storage or laboratory analysis, then

he writes the necessary reports.<sup>14</sup>

12. Arrest of Offenders

This is another of the many duties of the patrol officer, that is arresting those who violate the laws, and wanted persons.<sup>15</sup>

13. Testifying in Court

Testifying in Court is the patrol officer's final step in the investigation process. He responds to calls; conducts investigations; arrests the offender; processes the evidence; completes his report and then presents his evidence and testimony in Court.<sup>16</sup>

Society's most immediate defence against the criminal and delinquent is the police who remains indispensable in the prevention of crime and delinquency.<sup>17</sup>

The main aims of having uniformed policemen on patrol are related to the objectives of policing firstly,

to provide a visible police presence to deter people from breaking the law and to reassure law abiding members of the public; secondly, to detect offences against the law and take action against the law breakers; and thirdly, to befriend anyone who needs their help and provide a response to calls for assistance in cases of minor or major emergencies.

#### 7.4 Specialisation in the South African Police Force

Since the early days, policemen have become more scientific in their approach to the crime problem. The laboratory has become an important part of every police department. The offender of today keeps abreast of latest developments in methods and techniques of crime detection used by the police.<sup>18</sup>

Specialisation is based on the theory that a specialist has superior knowledge and a more intimate acquaintance of special problems, therefore they could

do a better job.<sup>19</sup>

The advantage of specialisation are numerous. Some of the advantages are: the placing of responsibility on selected individuals; persons with special interests could take the initiative to start such programmes; training becomes easier and enables to the development of experts intensive programmes could be given to a small group of persons, thus an esprit de corps is promoted.<sup>20</sup>

#### 7.4.1 The Detective Branch

As an illustration of the above facts the author discusses three of the more serious crimes committed by criminals briefly, namely : murder, theft and rape.

##### 7.4.1.1 Murder

Murder can be divided into two classes, that is, it may be a straightforward case with a simple solution or it may be an involved, motiveless case requiring the highest degree of acumen and perseverance

in the solving thereof.

In the following discussion two investigations are dealt with namely a typical murder in a building in an urban complex and a case of murder of poisoning. No two cases are exactly alike therefore each case must be dealt with on its own merits.

The specialists used by the detectives of the South African Police are : finger print experts, photographers, draughtsmen, ballistic experts, analysts and medical researchers, the South African Criminal Bureau and the district surgeon.

The investigating officer takes full charge at the scene of the crime and figuratively speaking tracks down the murderer at the scene. All unauthorised persons are removed from the scene or vicinity of the crime.<sup>21</sup>

The main aim of the investigation is to establish as soon as possible: who discovered the murder, when and where it was discovered, what led to the discovery, and

who committed the murder.

Some of the following procedures which are adopted in the investigations are :

1. all observations are recorded, from the time of the arrival of the investigator at the scene, in his pocket book.
2. All available witnesses are interviewed.
3. Nothing is handled or removed before the arrival of the experts.
4. The body of the deceased must not be removed or its position altered before it has been photographed and examined by the district surgeon.
5. The various experts for example, the finger print expert and the district surgeon are summoned to acquaint themselves with the seriousness of the crime. A long delay may prejudice the investigation.
6. The photographer takes inter alia, photographs of the body as it was disco=

vered and the necessary photographs of the room. Coloured photography is sometimes used because it shows up the colour of blood and clothing clearly.

7. A note is made of the deceased's clothing and the condition in which it was found.
8. Blood on the floor or against the walls must also be photographed.
9. The expert investigator examines the scene with minute care.
10. Where a weapon could have been used in the murder, it is closely examined for fingerprints. Documents and paper handled by the suspect must be seized. By treating them chemically, fingerprints can be discovered.
11. The experts examine the floor of the room to discover whether a struggle ensued or whether the murderer pressed his hands on the floor.
12. Footprints and other marks are photographed and subsequently compared with the shoes

of the murderer.

13. The marks made by implements used to force open inter alia, wardrobes, drawers and doors are photographed.
14. The point of entry is thoroughly examined for clues.
15. A careful examination is made of the body. It is done systematically commencing at the hand and concluding at the toes.
16. Scrapings are taken from underneath the nails of the deceased for evidence of fibres and portions of skin.
17. Other clues looked for are : specimens of hair, bloodstained clothing, weapons, etcetera.
18. The identity of the deceased is established. The fingerprints of the deceased, his family, friends and servants are also taken.
19. The motive for the murder must be established as soon as possible and details of missing articles must be obtained from relatives and friends.

20. Where the accused is known or someone is suspected the following information should be obtained : his residence must be thoroughly searched for corroborative evidence, his person must be examined for wounds or scratches; his nails must be scraped for clues, such as fibres, skin and blood; the clothes he is wearing and which might have been worn during the crime must be minutely examined for hair, blood and other clues.<sup>22</sup>

#### 7.4.1.2 Murder where Poisoning is Suspected

Murders in this category are committed mainly as a result of marital problems, disappointment in love affairs, legacies and or irregularities in regard thereto and less frequently out of revenge. The administering of poison is particularly resorted to by females and domestic servants.

Murder by poisoning can be divided into two groups:

In the first group there are those cases where only one dose of a poison is administered to have fatal consequences. In the second group a number of small doses of poison are administered over a period of time.

If the victim is alive everything should be done to administer medical treatment and if possible a dying declaration must be taken or evidence should be taken before a magistrate at the place where the victim is receiving medical treatment. Careful interrogation of witnesses and next of kin as to what transpired shortly before or immediately after death is essential. In carrying out the investigation, the following procedures are observed inter alia,

1. It must be ensured that all human remains that are removed and other substances are placed into the prescribed jars and sealed.
2. The stomach and contents must be placed separately in one jar; the kidneys and liver are to be stored in separate jars

and samples of nails and hair must be preserved also in separate clean glass containers.

3. If a body has already been interred an order must be obtained from the magistrate for the exhumation of the body for a post mortem examination. The exhumation takes place as early as possible in the morning to avoid public attention and publicity.
4. Samples are also taken of the soil immediately above the coffin, the wood of the coffin, the soil on both sides and directly below the coffin, the bones of the body and the shroud.
5. The purpose of analysing the samples is to determine the presence of poison in the body and to ascertain whether the victim died in consequence of one or more dosages. In the case of arsenic, the periods of administering the poison is also ascertained.
6. The purpose of the samples of the soil,

coffin and shroud is to determine whether any poison which may be found in the body, might possibly have emanated from that source.

Poisons can be administered in various ways. It can be mixed in food, liquor or even medicine. Certain poisons like arsenic have no taste or smell. Every attempt is made by the detectives to find the poison used and to seize it. It must also be established whether the suspect or even the victim, lawfully purchased any poison or acquired it in some other way.<sup>23</sup>

#### 7.4.1.3 Theft

"Theft is committed when a person unlawfully and by fraudulent means, without claim of right made in good faith takes or converts to his own use anything capable of being stolen with the intention of depriving the owner thereof of his right of ownership, or with the intention of depriving any person having any special

interest therein, of that interest."

A police detective deals mainly with the following classes of thefts. These include: domestic theft; shoplifting; occasional thefts, for example when a person acting on the spur of the moment steals something that is incidentally available or lying around; thefts of cash; pocket-picking and hand bag snatching; and thefts of a miscellaneous nature.

There are other forms of theft as well, these include inter alia, motor vehicle theft, cycle theft and stock theft which is too vast a subject to be discussed under the general heading of theft.

As far as the investigation of common theft is concerned the following principles are observed by the police detective.

1. The detective visits the scene of the crime, interviews the complainant, obtains full particulars of the crime and a description of the stolen articles and of possible suspects in the form of a statement.

2. Obtain statements of all other persons who can throw light on the matter.
3. It is important that what is being looked for is precisely known and for this reason the fullest description of the stolen property and of the suspect must be known for example, the article must be fully described like the serial number or engravings on the article. Other types of information which would be useful are evidence such as initials, name, dates and other identification marks. The above principles can be applied in respect of radios, fountain pens, wallets and almost everything which forms the subject of theft.

A full description of the suspect is also very important. Particulars such as age, race, sex, build and defects, personal appearance and characteristics such as speech defects, use of language and general modus operandi are of the utmost importance.

If evidence suggest that thefts occur regularly in a building then it is advisable

to conduct intelligent observation. There is no reason why the investigator should not dress as a carpenter, painter or plumber, and disguised as such give an innocent appearance to his observation. The measure of success achieved in the investigation will depend largely on his intelligence, acumen and his imagination.<sup>24</sup>

#### 7.4.1.4 Rape

Usually cases of rape are entrusted to the more experienced investigators. The investigator takes charge of the house, premises, vehicles, etcetera where the crime was allegedly committed. The scene of the crime is thoroughly and systematically examined for clues left by the accused.

A comprehensive affidavit is obtained from the complainant. Also a comprehensive affidavit from the person to whom the complainant made the first report mentioning the following facts : date and time of report, how the complainant expressed herself (her exact words); whether her

clothing was in a state of disorder or torn; what her state of mind was; what her physical condition was that is, whether she had any injuries.

Amongst the other procedures adopted by the detectives of the South African Police are :

1. to have the complainant examined as speedily as possible after the crime by the district surgeon.
2. Seminal and blood stained clothing, together with the swab and smear are sent for chemical analysis.
3. Endeavour to establish whether the alleged accused is known. If he is, then he should be arrested as soon as possible. Where the alleged accused is unknown, a full description should be obtained from the victim from her observation during the assault.
4. A fingerprint expert and draughtsmen must be summoned and a proper plan of the scene must be drawn and it is also to be photographed.

5. If there are any footprints or objects found which possibly bear the scent of the suspect, police dogs are summoned immediately.
6. Sheets, blankets and any object bearing blood and seminal stains are retained as exhibits.
7. A search is conducted for pieces of material or buttons which could possibly have been torn off by the complainant as well as any other property which could have been left upon the scene by the alleged accused.
8. The alleged accused must be examined by the district surgeon as soon as possible.

The investigation of rape offences should answer such questions as who, what, when, where, how and why.<sup>25</sup>

In the following discussion the role of some of the specialised branches of the South African Police in which Indian Policemen are employed are outlined below :

#### 7.4.2 The Security Branch

Any information which may possibly be of importance to the security of the State is brought to the attention of the Security Branch without delay. Information concerning the contraventions of the following must be conveyed to the Security Branch :

Section 21 of Act 76 of 1962 - Sabotage

High Treason

Sedition

Act 83 of 1967 - Terrorism

Crimen Laesae Magestates

Section 13 of Act 32 of 1961

Act 44 of 1950 - Suppression of Communism

Act 71 of 1951 - Diplomatic Privileges Act

Act 34 of 1960 - Unlawful Organisations Act

Act 90 of 1967 - Atomic Power Act

Act 3 of 1953 - Public Safety

Act 16 of 1956 - Disclosure of Official

Secrets

Act 17 of 1956 - Riotous Assemblies

Act 8 of 1953 - Resistance against laws

Act 44 of 1957 - Defence

Act 19 of 1911 - (sections 10, 11, 21 & 28) -  
Contempt of Parliament

In the case of sabotage the nearest security officer, district commandant and/or district Criminal Investigating Officer must be informed without delay and the scene of the crime must be visited immediately. The area is immediately cordoned off and taken control by the police. The scene is effectively guarded and controlled until a member of the Security Branch, inspector of explosives or other authorised persons arrive to take charge. Only the inspector of explosives or a person authorised in terms of the Explosives Act 26 of 1956, to destroy or to identify explosives may remove, move or tamper with such material or handle it in any way.

Every member of the Force is continually on the look-out for : information concerning

the movements and activities of suspected agitators inciters and other persons whom the Security Branch might be interested; the establishment and existence of organisations having subversive objectives; planned illegal processions, protests or gatherings; the identification of distributors and distribution of pamphlets hand-bills publications of any writing of whatever nature intended for subversion and inciting the masses, possession, acquisition, storage, transport or any fact relating to firearms, ammunitions explosives and similar things which would be used or applied in an unrest, acts of war, sabotage or the endangering of public peace and order; activities which indicate them, any training within or outside the Republic in conflict with the Suppression of Communism Act or the Terrorism Act is offered, encouraged or being undergone; the commission of an act of suspected sabotage or the planning of such an act which is in conflict with the General Law Amendment

Act, No. 76 of 1962 or the Terrorism Act, No. 83 of 1967; the movements of or presence of suspected trained terrorists or armed gangs within or outside the Republic; the movements and activities of persons who are known to be limited to specific areas or prohibited from attending certain gatherings in terms of the Suppression of Communism Act, No 44 of 1950; suspected secret escape routes which may be used by trainee terrorists and infiltrators; and secret communication system including "ghost" radio transmitters, means of transport and any other information which may reasonably be expected to be of use for the purposes of the Security Branch.<sup>26</sup>

#### 7.4.3 The Diamond and Gold Branch

##### 7.4.3.1 Diamonds

There are 29 diamond and gold posts in the Republic and South West Africa. Pretoria is the administrative headquarters. The main function of this branch is the combatting of illicit dealing in diamonds

and or gold. This branch is mainly concerned with inter alia, the control of the issuing of certificates, permits and licenses authorising the reclamation or handling of a trade in, and the cutting of diamonds; the control of the employment of persons in these activities; the compliance of the various Acts in the said industries; the control of the export of cut and uncut diamonds and the reclamation of and dealing in rough or uncut diamonds.

The Acts controlling activities in diamonds are :

The Precious Stones Act, 1964 (Act 73 of 1964)

Diamond Cutting Act, 1955 (Act 33 of 1955)

Diamond Export Duty Act, 1957 (Act 16 of 1957)

The Diamond/Gold Branch is responsible for the investigation of all offences committed under the diamond/gold laws.

The most common offences are : illicit

dealing in rough and uncut diamonds; illicit possession of rough or uncut diamonds; theft of rough or uncut diamonds; the sale of "slenter" diamonds, that is, imitation diamonds such as pieces of glass, crystals, etcetera. The charge is one of fraud.

Diamonds are usually hidden in matchboxes, motor vehicles, bicycles, clothing, fruit, etcetera. Constant vigilance, the cultivation of reliable informers and the assistance of every member of the Force is required to combat this evil. The illicit dealing in diamonds is the result of the theft of diamonds from one or other mine, diggings, etcetera followed by the offence of receiving stolen property.<sup>27</sup>

#### 7.4.3.2 Gold

For the purpose of this exposition precious metal refers to : gold, silver, platinum and iridium and any other metals of the platinum group or the ore thereof.

The activities of this Branch centre

around the : prevention and combatting of illicit trade in precious metals; the investigation of such contraventions; control and supervision over the reduction works of gold and platinum mines. Manufacturing Jewellers, Recovery Works and Dentists; allocation of gold quotas to jewellers and the control thereof; investigation of fraud cases arising from the sale of half-cents as gold sovereigns and valueless metal or ore thereof as precious metal; disposal of exhibits containing precious metals and which have been seized; and the investigation of any other cases which come to the notice or which arise from the investigation of smuggling of precious metals.

The average member of the Force may find it difficult to determine, without the proper tests, whether any metal, sand or rock contain precious metals. Occasionally when a member searches premises for stolen property he may find suspects in possession of tobacco bags, envelopes or other containers

which contain black powder. Especially among Bantus when they are asked for an explanation they allege the powder is used to make medicine. In fact the powder may have been rich gold concentrate and because the member may not be conversant with the facts the suspect may escape prosecution. Members are always on the lookout when charged with an investigation for : any yellow metal; any silver coloured metal; sand stored in wardrobes and other places in a house or premises; sand powder; ore or stones; mercury; saltpetre and borax, etcetera. It must be pointed out that the possession of these articles are not an offence but it indicates that the person concerned is or was engaged with illicit melting of gold. If and when a member receives information relating to illicit diamond or gold trading he immediately reports the matter to his station or branch commander who deals further with the matter.<sup>28</sup>

#### 7.4.4 The Commercial Branch

The Commercial Branch of the South African Police is a specialised branch of the Criminal Investigation Department, charged with the investigation of complicated and extensive commercial offences. The members of the branch are concerned with the investigations of contravention of the :

Insolvency Act, Act No 24 of 1936

Companies Act, Act No 46 of 1926

Insurance Act, Act No 27 of 1943

Unit Trusts Control Act, Act 18 of 1947

Building Societies Act, Act 62 of 1934

Banking Act, Act 38 of 1942

Stock Exchange Control Act, Act 7 of 1947

Securities Transfer Act, Act 69 of 1965

Co-operative Societies Act, Act 29 of 1939

Trust Moneys Protection Act, Act 34 of 1934

Administrations of Estates Act, Act 66  
of 1965

Usury Act, Act 37 of 1926

Currency and Exchanges Act, Act 9 of 1933

Public Accountants and Auditors Act,

Act 51 of 1951

Inspection of Financial Institutions

Act, Act 68 of 1962

Financial Institutions (Investment of  
Funds) Act, Act 56 of 1964

Friendly Societies Act, Act 25 of 1956

Magistrates Court Act, Act 32 of 1944

Theft of trust moneys by attorneys

Theft of company and/or partnership funds

Theft by curators and liquidators of  
insolvent estates

Theft by executors of assets of deceased  
estates; and

Fraud

With reference to fraud investigations  
are made inter alia when it only results  
from inter-company transaction; double  
discounting of hire purchase contracts;  
or when fraud is committed by means of  
factoring that is, sale of debts or by  
company directors which results in the  
company being placed in liquidation and  
all other cases of a comprehensive nature  
requiring specialised knowledge and investi=

gation.<sup>29</sup>

#### 7.4.5 Conclusion

There are two sources of information obtained by the police. They are from persons and objects. Scientific and technological progress regarding the analysis and evaluation of a great variety of objective clues has created the need for specialised activities like these discussed in section B of this chapter.

Crime investigation implies the detection, identification, arrest and prosecution of the offender, its primary purpose is the positive solving of crime by means of objective and subjective clues. Objective clues mean factual proof and objective explanations of these, that is, "mute" indirect or circumstantial evidence. Subjective clues are evidences offered by persons directly or indirectly concerned in the crime.

The South African Police have opportunities created for Indian policemen who

are interested in these fields. Those members aspiring to specialise in various fields are carefully selected and trained for their vocation.

## 7.5 Police Reservists

Police reservists form an integral part of policing in South Africa. They are playing an important supplementary role in maintaining law and order in the land.

Police Reservists are composed of men who work voluntarily on a part-time basis in the South African ~~Police~~ Force. The members are organised into patrols. They usually serve the community in which they live. In view of the important place which is allocated to these men, a detailed analysis of their activities will be discussed below.

### 7.5.1 The Origin of Indian Police Reservists

The history of the Indian Police Reservists began in 1962. A batch of Indian and Coloured Reservists were trained in that

year. When the call went out to the public for volunteers to join the Force, the response was very encouraging.<sup>30</sup>

Police Reservists are drawn from every strata of the community. They vary in occupation from ordinary laymen to factory owners and teachers.

#### 7.5.2 Establishment

The establishment of Police Reservists was welcomed by the authorities of the South African Police. Its ranks have been strengthened by the co-operation of thousands of public spirited citizens. They are frequently called upon to take action on their own initiative without the guidance of the regular members of the South African Police.<sup>31</sup> They also perform the same functions and have the same powers and authority as any other member of the Force.

When Police Reservists are off duty their powers and authority are those of private persons. While undergoing practical

training the Police Reservists are regarded as being "on duty".<sup>32</sup>

### 7.5.3 Enlistment

Any male between the ages of 21 and 70 years may apply for an appointment as a Police Reservist. Application forms are always available from the local police station. On his application form, the prospective applicant provides the authorities with his personal details such as his surname, Christian names, identity number, full residential address, date and place of birth. Further, he is required to give his profession, the name and address of his employer, his marital status, driving licence, and police or military experience. The candidate is also asked to name the police station in which he wishes to serve, and the group he intends joining (Group A, B or C). The completed application form has to be signed in the presence of a Commissioner of Oaths or Justice of the Peace. Candidates are also required to undergo a medi-

cal examination to show that they are medically fit to perform the duties of a policeman.

The completed application form is duly signed and forwarded to the Station Commander. If the application is accepted then the applicant is required to take an Oath of Allegiance similar to that taken by members of the South African Police.<sup>33</sup>

The Commissioner must approve of his appointment.

#### 7.5.4 Training

The training of recruits is extended over a period of six months, with weekly lectures for the duration of one hour. A series of lectures are given, these include lectures on : the Police Act, Police Standing Orders and Police Law. On the completion of the course a Certificate of appointment is issued by the Commissioner of the South African Police. A copy of "The Police Reservist's Guide" is given to new members to help them in the performance

of their duties.<sup>34</sup>

#### 7.5.5

#### The Grouping of Police Reservists

Police Reservists are classified into the following groups :

##### A. Reserve

The members of this group help the police in their duties in the charge office, manning police vehicles, beat duties and guarding vulnerable points.

##### B. Reserve

(Home Guard) - Reservists of this group are prepared to do two hourly shifts daily without remuneration in their own residential area in times of emergency and large scale crime waves.

##### C. Reserve

Consists of employees of local authorities, fuel companies and bodies of national importance who are especially recruited to guard vulnerable points for their employers.

D. Reserve

This group helps the police in combatting riots in rural towns.<sup>35</sup>

Most Indians belong to the A and B groups.

In his Annual Report for the period 1st July 1968 to 30 June 1969 the Commissioner of Police mentioned that large numbers of Reservists assist the full time police during their spare time, at night, over the week-ends and on public holidays, throughout the cities, towns and even in rural areas. Some have contributed in making important arrests in connection with murder, burglary, car theft, robbery and similar crimes.

The Commissioner of Police also pointed out that direct help in times of an unrest was invaluable to the police. The training and first hand experience in police duties and the application of the law gained by thousands of citizens must benefit the community as a whole. It is in this way

that large numbers of people from different walks of life are brought into direct and intimate association with the police, its organisation, its problems and the difficulties experienced by the Force. In this way a better understanding and a sounder and more co-operative relationship can develop between the public and the police.<sup>36</sup>

#### 7.5.6 Uniform and Equipment

The uniform worn by the Police Reservists are the same as that of the Permanent Police Force. The uniform is issued free to all Police Reservists. The weapons provided include a baton, a pair of handcuffs and firearms which are issued only under special circumstances. These weapons are only used by the Reservists when they are on duty.

#### 7.5.7 Promotion Examinations

There are no promotion examination for Police Reservists. Promotions to higher

ranks are made on merit. When vacancies exist, confidential reports are submitted to higher authority and promotions are made on the basis of these reports. The most important criteria for promotion is the ability of the Reservist to carry out his duty successfully.

#### 7.5.8 Insignia and Designation

The insignia and designation of ranks in respect of Reservists are exactly the same as the members of the permanent Force.<sup>37</sup>

#### 7.5.9 Discipline

Should there be any disciplinary problems with Police Reservists, the only measure implemented is the reprimand.<sup>38</sup> Regulation 58 of the South African Police Force and the provisions in the Police Act, Act No. 7 of 1958 is also applied.

#### 7.5.10 Charge Office and Outdoor Duty

A duty list and sheet of instructions are circulated regularly to Police Reservists

in order to draw their attention to any special requirements or to delegate duties to members for week-ends or for specific periods.

#### 7.5.11 The Duties of Police Reservists on Patrol

1. The Reservist is placed under control of a superior in rank. He (the Reservist) is frequently called upon to act on his own responsibility, therefore he should possess adequate intelligence, discretion, active habits and a good temper.
  
2. The Reservist receives instructions from his superiors with deference and respect, and he is expected to carry them out without delay. In his duty he is expected to be prompt and should show unhesitating obedience to his superiors. If in his opinion, the Reservist, feels that an order appears to be unlawful to him, he may complain to his officer afterwards, but a refusal to comply with any order or command is not permitted.

3. It is expected of the Reservist, to be alert always, for the prevention of crime and the protection of the public. He should never omit to report any circumstance that may appear to affect public welfare or the character of the Force.
4. It is important that he should refrain from being over zealous or meddlesome. His main object should be to perform his duty and to be helpful to the public where his assistance would be useful. When it becomes his duty to stop a disorder he must act with promptness and firmness.
5. For minor offences when a warning is issued he is expected to make an entry of the fact in his note book, stating the name and address of the person warned.
6. The Reservist is required to treat all people with civility, forbearance and good temper. He should not be moved or be excited by any language or threats, however, insolent. The cooler he keeps

the more power he will have over his assailant.<sup>39</sup>

## 7.5.12

The Responsibilities of the Reservists  
on Guard Duty

Police Reservists are placed in specific areas to protect the citizens in those areas. Their first duty is to avoid danger coming to those in their care. They (police reservists) carry out this responsibility by preventing unauthorized persons from entering or interfering with premises or works. Police Reservists should be able to challenge and identify all persons approaching the property they protect.

It is expected that the Police Reservist would not permit personal comfort nor any other side issues to distract his attention. Instructions should be given in a clear voice which would not be misinterpreted. Matters relating to their duty ought not to be discussed when they are off-duty.<sup>40</sup>

### 7.5.13 Evaluation

There has been continued public interest in this (Reservist) area of policing. Many Indians are continually coming forward to join the Force on a voluntary basis. Members have rendered valuable service especially over week-ends. In the various centres of the Republic these members successfully assumed command of and manned police stations over week-ends. Indian reservists rendered valuable services in maintaining law and order in their own residential districts. There is a constant increase in the number of members joining the Ranks of Police Reservists.

REFERENCES

1. Bunyard, R.S. : Police : Organisation and Command,  
Macdonald and Evans Ltd.,  
Estover, Plymouth, 1978,  
pp. 88-90.
2. Ibid.
3. South African Police Standing Orders :  
section 204 (i) (a).
4. Ibid., section 204 (6).
5. Ibid., section 204 (7).
6. Ibid., section 204 (12).
7. Ibid., section 204 (13).
8. Ibid., section 204 (17).
9. Ibid., section 210 (6).
10. Ibid., section 223 (11).
11. Brochure : "The South African Police as a Career", p. 15.

12. Adams, T.F. : op. cit., p. 10.
13. Ibid., p. 14.
14. Ibid., p. 16.
15. Ibid., p. 17.
16. Ibid., p. 18.
17. Martin, J.H. : Juvenile Vandalism,  
Charles C. Thomas,  
U.S.A., 1961. pp. 135-136.
18. Clift, R.E. : A Guide to Modern Police  
Thinking.  
W.H. Anderson Company,  
Cincinnati, 1970, p.13.
19. Eldefonso, E. : Principles of Law  
Coffey, A. & Enforcement, John  
Grace, R.C. Wiley and Sons, Ltd.,  
New York, 1968, p. 136.
20. Ibid., p. 136
21. Government : Criminal Investigation,  
Printer Manual for members of  
the South African Police.

22. Ibid.
23. Ibid.
24. Ibid.
25. Ibid.
26. The South African Police : Hints on the Investigation of Crime,  
The Government Printer, Pretoria, Chapter 2.
27. Ibid.
28. Ibid.
29. Ibid.
30. Information obtained from Lieutenant Govindasamy, South African Police Training College for Indians, Wentworth, 1975.
31. Police Reservists Guide, pp. 1-6.
32. Ibid., pp. 1-5.
33. Information obtained from Lieutenant Govindasamy, South African Police Training College for Indians, Wentworth, 1975.

34. Ibid.
35. Annual Report of the Commissioner  
South African Police for the year  
ended 1963, p. 4.
36. Annual Report of the Commissioner  
South African Police for the period  
1 July 1968 - 30 June 1969, pp. 2-3.
37. Ibid., pp. 2-3.
38. Information obtained from Lieutenant  
Govindasamy, South African Police  
Training College for Indians, Wentworth,  
1975.
39. Police Reservists Guide, pp. 20-21
40. Ibid., pp. 21-22.

C H A P T E R 8THE TRAINING OF INDIAN POLICEMEN AND POLICEWOMEN  
AND OTHER RELATED MATTERS8. The Course of Training

Progressive police departments realise that the police cannot do their jobs efficiently without adequate training. Training is vital because of the great number and variety of tasks policemen must perform. It is carefully planned, organised and conducted to help recruits to master police standards as soon as possible.

It is necessary for policemen to revise and improve old procedures and develop new techniques as their modus operandi. Basic entrance qualifications have been recently revised to improve the standard of police work. In this Chapter the author outlines some important historical facts about the training of Indian members of the South African Police Force;

the training of Indian Policemen and Indian Policewomen, and other related matters.

8.1 The Training of Indian Policemen in the South African Police Force

Prior to 1953 no proper facilities were provided for the training of Indian policemen in the South African Police Force.

A Police Training Depot was opened at Wentworth in Durban primarily for Bantu recruits in 1953. It remained in operation for two years. Apart from the training given to Bantu recruits a number of courses of six weeks duration were held for older members of the South African Police. The Training was specifically directed at giving the Indian members of the Force who had not received any formal training up to this time the opportunity to receive some instruction. A total of 101 Indian policemen attended this course.<sup>1</sup>

On the 1 January 1957 the depot reopened for the training of Bantu recruits but was finally closed as a Bantu Training Depot on the 31 December 1960. This heralded a period

whereby the first fulltime training session extending over a period of three months was offered to Indian recruits. During the four year period extending from 1957 to 1960 eighty four Indian recruits underwent training. An average of 21 recruits were trained each year.

In 1961 training was given to a troop of 29 Indian recruits. In 1962 there were no Indian recruits so the Training Depot remained closed.

It was only recently, in 1963, that the first six months training course was instituted for Indian recruits. The output for that year was 64. During the same year (1963) the first Passing Out Parade for Indians was held. This Parade coincided with the South African Police Golden Jubilee Celebrations. On this occasion the Honourable Minister of Indian Affairs, Mr W.A. Maree was present.

The annual output of Indian policemen during 1964-1965 was 72 per annum.

Since 1966 the Passing Out Parades have invariably been held in one or another

Indian area in Durban. These occasions were unfailingly followed by numerous letters from the Indian public marvelling at the fine drill and physical training displays given by the new recruits.

In 1967 the name of the Police Training Depot at Wentworth, Durban was changed to the Wentworth South African Police Training College. This College stands on a 4 acre plot of ground in Tifflin Road, Austerville. The buildings are not new, but the South African Police has made use of old naval barracks on the site, which was renovated in 1948 to accommodate the recruits.

At the Training College sporting facilities are provided, and sports clubs have been formed for soccer, table tennis and other games.

The Staff comprises of Indian members of the South African Police and the Commanding Officer in charge presently (1982) Lt.-Col. S. Pillai.<sup>2</sup>

On the 8 February 1972, Indians were enlisted for the first time for anti terrorist activities and border duties. Numerous members

have since undergone training and have seen service in the Eastern Caprivi Strip where they acquitted themselves well.<sup>3</sup>

It was in the same year (1972) that the training of non-Whites as commanders was extended to Indian members. Thirty-five Indian in-servicemen attended the course.<sup>4</sup>

## 8.2 Theoretical Principles of Police Training in South Africa

The undermentioned principles were provided for the writer by Major-General H.G. De Witt for the Commissioner of the South African Police on the 16 March 1979. In his memorandum he stated that training is planned with the object of providing the young policemen with a thorough knowledge and understanding of his multifarious duties. Emphasis is laid on the development of character and proper disposition to enable him to serve his fellow men with the strict impartiality in a heterogeneous community.

Training is done on a decentralised basis, due to the fact that the requirements and

availability of students vary greatly in the various communities and provinces.

#### 8.2.1 Law

In order to ensure maximum efficiency in his work, one of the basic requirements is that a policeman be fully conversant with the various laws of the Republic of South Africa with a strong emphasis on those sections dealing with offences which commonly appear. For this reason many hours of training is devoted to :

- 1 South African Criminal Law "A";
- .2 South African Criminal Law "B";
- .3 The Criminal Procedure and Evidence Act; and
- .4 Various Ordinances.

#### 8.2.2 Force Administration

It is obvious that any organisation with such wide dimensions as the South African Police, shall have an equally vast and complicated administration. Further it is common knowledge that no organisation can function effi=

ciently and smoothly without proper administration. Therefore a basic knowledge of the functions of the Force and its administration is a vital necessity for the police student. Students are taught Force Administration along the guide lines of :

- 1 The South African Police Act
- 2 Regulations for the South African Police;
- 3 Standing Orders;
- 4 Standing Orders (Financial); and
- 5 Standing Orders (Stores)

In addition, students are taught the principles of proper reporting where the emphasis is on objectivity, accuracy, completeness, conciseness and comprehensibility.

### 8.2.3 Investigation of Crime

One of the functions of the South African Police is the investigation of any offence or alleged offence. Since its inception, the South African Police Force has built up a proud record of detective work which has

greatly enhanced the prestige of the Force. To promote the efficient investigation of crime students are taught how to act at the scene of crime, what evidence and clues to look for, what exhibits to seize and preserve, how to interview complainants, witnesses and suspects and how to take down their statements. The importance of the various aids at his disposals, such as :

- 1 The South African Criminal Bureau;
- 2 The South African Police Forensic Laboratory;
- 3 The South African Police Crime Research Bureau;
- 4 The South African Police Tracking dogs;
- 5 The South African Police Radio Communication System, etcetera, is brought to his attention.

#### 8.2.4 Contact Situation

- 1 A great deal of a policeman's work is in the contact situation where, in the execution of his daily task, he deals with various types of people of all races for

equally various reasons. Constantly he is in contact with complainants, victims, witnesses, suspects, drunks, emotionally disturbed persons, innocent bystanders, professional people such as medical doctors, attorneys, advocates, to name but a few. Lectures on human relations are thus regarded as a vital ingredient of the training programme.

8.2.4.2 The South African Police, as a national Force, forms the first line of defence in the event of internal unrest. Accordingly all students receive thorough training in :

- 1 Infantry drill and manoeuvres
- 2 Theoretical and practical instruction in musketry and the safe and efficient handling of different types of fire-arms;
- 3 First Aid;
- 4 Crowd Control;
- 5 Techniques of Arrest;
- 6 Self Defence, etcetera.

### 8.2.5 Social Evils

Lectures also cover social evils such as:

- 1 Prostitution;
- 2 Alchholism;
- 3 Drug addiction, etcetera.

These lectures are supplemented by educational films and other audio-visual aids.

Instructors responsible for training are specially selected and properly trained for their diverse tasks.

### 8.2.6 Physical Training

Physical Training is an important facet of the training course and includes boxing, wrestling, karate and many other forms of sport.

8.2.7 After completion of the training course at the College, the student's training is continued on a man-to-man basis at his station to enable him to keep abreast of the latest developments in his chosen career and to

acquire a thorough practical knowledge of police work. This part of the training is very concentrated and intensive and covers all the above aspects as well as all practical situations which he comes in contact within his particular field of study.

8.2.8 Promotion to a higher rank follows the successful participation in the annual promotion examinations.

8.2.9 The Force offers numerous courses on different rank levels on an advanced in-service training basis, for;

- 1 Candidate officers;
- 2 Detectives;
- 3 Dog handlers;
- 4 Fingerprint experts;
- 5 Photographers
- 6 Motor Mechanics;
- 7 Radio technicians;
- 8 Administrative courses for;

- 1 Financial clerks;
- 2 Store clerks;
- 3 Mortuary attendants, etcetera.

8.2.10 The above discussion is a broad outline of the theoretical principles it does not cover every aspect of training nor does it go into detail on any facet of training.

### 8.3 Recruiting Campaigns

During recruiting campaigns, talks on careers in the South African Police Force are given and several films are screened. Pamphlets on the conditions of service in the Force are distributed to prospective candidates. The purpose of a recruiting campaign is to bring to the notice of the public the prospects offered to young men and also to promote future recruiting.<sup>5</sup>

The underlying idea is to recruit boys before they secure other employment: The Department has experienced that many boys leave school at this age, secure work and cannot at a later stage sever their connections so easily, with

the result that many young men are lost to the Force.

The number of Indian recruits seeking admission to the Police Force is so great that preference is given to the best educated applicants and it is ensured that they know at least one official language.<sup>6</sup>

To stimulate interest in the public, advertisements appear in school magazines and other suitable journals. Films are prepared for departmental and public release. In this way the image of the Force is enhanced by the publication of an excellent calendar.

Officers from the Police Headquarters have on occasions visited Police Districts throughout the Republic to confer with officers, station and branch commanders and to impress upon them the importance of being on the lookout for suitable young men who might be recruited to the Force.

Another method of stimulating interest is to set up a portable recruiting stand at a Careers Week Show at various agricultural shows in the

Republic.

This unit is so constituted so as to depict practically every facet in the Police Force, through films, colour slides and photographs.<sup>7</sup>

#### 8.4 Requirements for Enlistment in the South African Police

Appointment to the South African Police Force is subjected to certain requirements. A male person who :

- 8.4.1 is a South African citizen;
- 8.4.2 is between the ages of 18 and 35;
- 8.4.3 is at least 1,67m tall without shoes and has a chest measurement of at least 86,26cm;
- 8.4.4 is free of physical or mental defects, has a strong constitution and is suited for police service;
- 8.4.5 can show proof of good character;
- 8.4.6 if a minor, has written consent from his father or legal guardian;
- 8.4.7 has passed at least the sixth standard of education;

- 8.4.7 is able to speak, read and write at least one of two official languages of the Republic (that is, English or Afrikaans); and
- 8.4.9 is prepared to serve in any branch of the Force anywhere in the Republic or South West Africa, such a candidate who meets with the above requirements qualifies for enlistment in the South African Police, application for enlistment can be made at the nearest police station.

After attesting (that is taking of the oath that accompanies the commencement of service the applicants are posted temporarily to various police stations where their training in practical duties begin, until they are later called up for further training at the Indian Training College at Wentworth, Durban. During training they receive the same salary, allowances and opportunities as fully fledged members of the Force.<sup>8</sup>

#### 8.5 Duration and Nature of Training

At present the duration of training for Indian members is approximately six months

and every young recruit is trained in the finer arts of his profession by selected members of his own group.

A career in the Police Force can never become boring, because there is so much variety, the student's training must cover a very wide field in practice and theory. As far as the physique is concerned, physical education, self defence, boxing, wrestling, swimming and other forms of sport are part of the men's toughening-up process. With this comes parades and ceremonial drill which disciplines the student and gives the representative of the law that distinguished and proud bearing.

The theoretical training covers a knowledge of the law and other subjects that will provide a broad background. To learn the law many periods are devoted to the study of the South African Criminal Law, Statute Law, Criminal Procedure and Investigation of Crime. The trainee must also have a thorough knowledge of the Police Act and Police Regulations and the publications relating to the admini-

stration of the Force. Besides these, subjects such as First Aid, Criminology, Civic and Race Relations are offered with an eye to the necessary background.<sup>9</sup>

The motivations for some of the more important subjects are as follows :

## 8.6 Practical Training

### 8.6.1 Military Training

The South African Police is a national Police Force. It is the first line of defense in the case of an internal unrest. So all members receive a thorough training in infantry, drill, movements and manoeuvres.

### 8.6.2 Musketry

The members of the Force are required to handle firearms in the execution of their duty, in the suppression of riots or in apprehending dangerous criminals or if they are engaged in other dangerous duties. A thorough training in the use of conventional small arms, the use of tear gas and other methods of crowd control is extremely necessary.

### 8.6.3 Physical Training

Because of the strenuous nature of police duties and because the recruits are generally very young and not yet fully developed physically, quite some time is spent on the various forms of physical exercise and self combat such as judo, boxing, wrestling, etcetera.

### 8.6.4 First Aid

When there are serious accidents or other major disasters, the police are called to help the injured. During their training period recruits are given practical training in handling the injured at the scene of the disaster or accident. The training includes the treatment of wounds and fractures, arresting haemorrhage, artificial respiration and the like.<sup>10</sup>

### 8.6.5 Fatigue

Fatigue includes the teaching of cleanliness and discipline to students, the upkeep of gardens and lawns are an essential part of the course.<sup>11</sup>

#### 8.6.6 Anti-Riot Drill

This is also an essential part of the course. The aim is to teach the methods of quelling riots through specific formations, the use of guns, tear gas and batons.<sup>12</sup>

#### 8.7 Theoretical Training

The following functional and academic training is given to recruits :

##### 8.7.1 Force Administration

Force Administration includes lectures on the Police Act, Regulations and Standing Orders of the South African Police. The Police Act prescribes the various powers and duties of members of the Force. The Regulations and Standing orders outline the powers, privileges, limitations, conditions of service, disciplinary codes, maintenance of registers and forms and general procedures as are prescribed by the Police Act.

##### 8.7.2 Criminal Procedure and Evidence

Lectures are based on the South African

Criminal Procedure and Evidence as promulgated in Act No 51 of 1977 and its amendments. The Act prescribes inter alia, the powers and duties of peace officers, which include policemen on the following matters: arrest procedures, searches, procedures for obtaining various legal warrants, bail, admission of guilt, confessions, use of firearms, breaking open of premises and matters relating to the appearance of an accused person, necessary evidence and procedure of trial in inferior courts.

#### 8.7.3 Statute Laws

Instruction in this course include a wide range of South African Statutes, provincial and local ordinances which place duties and powers upon the police.

#### 8.7.4 Criminal Investigation

Criminal Investigation includes hints on the general investigation of crime reports, specific evidence and procedure in the investigation of certain offences. Recruits are also taught the various aids used in the

investigation of crimes such as finger and foot prints, police gazettes, police tracker dogs, photographs, draughtsmanship and police laboratories.<sup>13</sup>

8.8 Lectures at the South African Police Training College for Indians in Durban

Lectures begin each day at 08h00 and terminate at 16h30 with extra drill if necessary up to 17h30. Students may be visited by relatives and friends between 16h30 to sunset each Wednesday and from noon to 18h00 on Saturdays. On Sundays and on public holidays visiting times are from 10h00 to 18h00.<sup>14</sup>

8.9 After Completion of Training

After completion of the training, students are sent to their new stations. Members of the Force may not choose where they want to be placed, but must serve where the Force needs them most. Students are posted where possible to provinces from which they came, with consideration to the different requirements of the provinces, but as a rule not to their home towns.

PROGRAM FOR CLASS 21 WEEK 18

INITIAL COURSE OF TRAINING FOR INDIAN STUDENTS

FROM 11. 11. 74 TO 16. 11. 74.

PERIODS	MONDAY 11. 11. 74	TUESDAY 12. 11. 74	WEDNESDAY 13. 11. 74	THURSDAY 14. 11. 74	FRIDAY 15. 11. 74.	SATURDAY 16. 11. 74
8AM - 8.15AM	Parade and Barracks Insp.	Parade and Barracks Insp.	Parade and Barracks Insp.	Parade and Barracks Insp.	Parade and Barracks Insp.	Parade and Barracks and
8.15AM - 9AM	South African Criminal Law	Statute Law	Musketry Examination	Force Investigation	Criminal Investigation	Fatigue
9.10AM - 10AM	South African Criminal Law	Criminal Procedure	Musketry Examination	Force Administration	Criminal Investigation	Fatigue
10.10AM - 11AM	Force Administration	Criminal Investigation	Musketry Examination	Criminal Investigation	Statute law	Fatigue
11.15AM - 12MD	Force Administration	Criminal Investigation	Force Administration	Criminal Investigation	Anti Riot Drill	Barracks Inspection
12.10PM - 1PM	Physical Training	Anti Riot Drill	Physical Training	Physical Training	Physical Training	Free
1.30PM - 2.20PM	Drill	Drill	Drill	Drill	Drill	Drill
2.30PM - 3.20PM	Drill	Wrestling	Drill	Drill	Drill	Drill
3.40PM - 4.30PM	Drill		Drill	Drill	Drill	Free

EXTRA DRILL - 12. 11. 74 (Tuesday) Ind/W/Off. M. Chetty  
from 4/30pm. to 5/30pm.

If young constables want to change their posts after arriving at their stations, they may make such a change by means of exchange transfers at their own expense and on condition that permission has been granted.

As soon as students have completed their training, they become members of the Uniform Branch in which the majority of members serve. As members of the Uniform Branch they may:

- 1 investigate any crime, serve summons, and make other enquiries;
- 2 work in charge offices where they take statements, keep registers, hear complaints and carry out many other duties; and
- 3 patrol streets and other places by squad car, patrol van or on foot.

Besides the abovementioned, there are also the Investigation Branch and the Security Branch offering a wide variety of specialised work within the Force.<sup>15</sup>

8.10 Dismissal, Discharge or Reduction of Non-Commissioned Member of the Force

According to the South African Police Act, Act No. 7 of 1958 section 17, "A member of the Force who is not a commissioned officer, may be discharged or dismissed from the Force or be reduced in rank if after an enquiry in a manner prescribed by regulations, as to his fitness to remain in the Force or to retain his rank, the Commissioner or Divisional Commissioner of the Division in which such a member is serving or any other commissioned officer designated by the Commissioner is of the opinion that he is unfit to remain in the Force or to retain his rank, as the case may be.

"Any such member may in a manner prescribed by the Regulations appeal to the Minister against an order discharging or dismissing him or reducing him in rank, and in such event the Minister may confirm, alter or set aside such order or make such other order as to him seems just."

8.11 Promotion Prospects

Promotion to a higher rank follows mainly on specified police examinations of which the

syllabus is prescribed by the Commissioner of Police.

#### 8.12 Salaries and Allowances

Salaries are the same as those for the Civil Service. Adjustments take place on the same basis as recommended by the Public Service Commission for the Civil Service. Starting salaries are determined by educational and academic qualifications, age, previous experience and artisan qualifications.

In addition to the basic salary a member is issued with free uniform. Each member is paid a privation allowance to compensate for irregular hours, exposure to the elements and so on.

#### 8.13 Leave

Where possible only a five-day week is maintained. Members who have to work over week-ends, receive days off during the week.

Annual leave, with full salary paid, is as follows :

1 Less than 10 years' service - 30 days a  
year.

2 Ten years and more - 36 days a year.

Sick leave is granted as follows :

3 During a cycle of 3 years a member is en=  
titled to 120 days sick leave with full pay  
and 120 days with half pay.

4 When a member is injured on duty, including  
injury during approved amateur sport, this  
does not affect normal sick leave benefits  
but is controlled by regulations providing  
for sick leave pay with full pay. If a  
policeman is injured on duty, all medical  
expenses are borne by the State.

#### 8.14 Other Benefits

1 A member and his family can travel by train  
to any place in the Republic and South West  
Africa once a year at railway concession  
tariffs.

2 A member is entitled to dental, medical and  
hospital treatment, including medicine and

dressings at State expense. Where the services of a specialist is required the member pays only one seventh of the account.

3 Every member belongs to the Government Service Pension Scheme. With small monthly contribution, unequalled pension benefits are acquired, which are payable to members on retiring.

4 A holiday bonus that varies from R50-00 to R130-00 for single and from R100-00 to R260-00 for married members, is paid annually on 30 September to each member of the Force employed before July 1st of that year.<sup>16</sup>

#### 8.15 Indian Policewomen

Indian women have for the first time in the history of the South African Police, been enrolled as students in the Force (May, 1982).

The College, the first of its kind in the country, is at Cato Manor in Durban. In keeping with its significance is the fact that its commanding officer is the highest-ranked Indian policeman in the country.

Lieutenant-Colonel S. Pillai, who is also in charge of the Wentworth South Africa Police Training College for Indian men. His aim is to produce fully-trained police-women able to work effectively as their male counterparts. The requirements for a talented policewomen is a "good education, a strong character and an aptitude for police work.

Only 16 women were chosen from 60 applicants - all with different backgrounds. "One of them has a diploma in hotel management and many others are already working in the Force as clerks," but all of them have a Senior Certificate.<sup>17</sup>

The ages of the women in this pioneer group ranges from 19 to 25 years and their course lasts for 6 months which would end in October 1982. At the completion of this course the women will be fully equipped to work in three branches of the South African Police Force. These are the Uniformed Branch, the Criminal Investigation Division and Special Security. The women will be expected to begin their

career in the Uniformed Branch and this would give men the opportunity to work in the streets. The South African Police has emphasised the fact that women in the Force will do the same policing as their male counterparts at the end of their training - with a few exceptions, that is, they will not be sent to scenes of violence nor to the border. Further, they will not be trained with the mounted police nor with the police dogs.

Their studies are fairly extensive and the subjects taken at the College are criminal law, criminal procedure, the investigation of crime and police administration. They also have lectures in first aid, as well as on musketry followed by a shooting practice, Drill, physical training and self defence are all part of the course. Some of these lectures are held at the Wentworth South African Police Training College because of the lack of facilities at Cato Manor.

The women are allowed home for "some weekends" and are not allowed out during the week.

Studies are done during the evening during a compulsory study period, after which they are allowed to read or sew or do whatever interests them.

Recreation is in the form of films at the weekend and basketball is played at the college in Wentworth.

The women appear in their training uniforms, but will receive their full uniforms exactly the same as those worn by the other women in the Force - before they complete their course.

Indian policewomen will receive salaries the same as their White and Coloured counterparts and the usual fringe benefits e.g. medical aid, sick leave, housing allowance, etcetera ) and promotions will be available to them.

The starting salary for Indian Policewomen is R452-00 per month if they have their Senior Certificate in the higher or standard grades.<sup>18</sup>

## 16. Conclusion and Evaluation

The South African Police offers a career

full of opportunities, variety, challenges and adventure with adequate compensation and security, but in return it demands dedication and sacrifice.

The period of training and the type of training will decide the quality of officers that the public would like to see. Longer periods of training will save the government many rands resulting from law suits. Physical training and education and the rôle of officers must be examined. One should not be sacrificed at the expense of the other. Too much physical training will create the impression in the minds of the recruits that they are being prepared to fight members of the public physically. However fit an officer may be at the time he passes out of the training college, his fitness is bound to wane if he does not continue thereafter. More emphasis on role function will equip him mentally and improve his relationship with the public.

The notion that police officers need muscles and not brains is an archaic concept. Factors

such as height, weight, educational qualifications and other requirements of minor importance are not the only standards by which recruiting should be measured. Man as a complex being is shaped not only by his physical environment but also by his inner environment. Therefore priority should be given to psychological and psychiatric testing and background investigations. In other words, a police officer should be physically and mentally suited to the onerous tasks that lie ahead of him.

REFERENCES

1. Information obtained from Lieutenant Govinda= samy, South African Police Training College for Indians, Wentworth, Durban.
2. Information obtained from Lt.-Col. S. Pillai, Officer Commanding S.A.P. Training College for Indians, Wentworth, Durban.
3. Annual Report of the Commissioner South African Police for the year ended 1972, pp. 3-8.
4. Ibid., pp. 3-8
5. Annual Report of the Commissioner South African Police for the year ended 1953, p. 1.
6. Ibid., pp. 2-3.
7. Annual Report of the Commissioner South African Police for the period 1 July 1963 to 30 June 1969, p. 3.
8. Information obtained from the Officer Com= manding S.A.P. Training College for Indians, Wentworth, Durban.

9. Ibid.
10. Information obtained from Police Headquarters, Pretoria.
11. Information obtained from Instructors S.A.P. Training College for Indians, Wentworth, Durban.-
12. Information obtained from the Officer Commanding, S.A.P. Training College for Indians, Wentworth, Durban.
13. Information obtained from Police Headquarters, Pretoria.
14. Information obtained from the Officer Commanding, S.A.P. Training College, Wentworth, Durban.
15. Ibid.
16. Ibid.
17. Ibid.
18. Ibid.

S E C T I O N CINTRODUCTION

The police and the community have a very important role to play for the continued orderly survival of society. The fact that society has delegated its powers to the police does not relieve it of the primary duty of ensuring its safety.

The facile partnership between the police and the community in regard to maintenance of order represents on different levels the roles that the police and community occupy. On the one hand, the police are the active partners in the promotion of the partnership, while on the other hand the community as passive partners bear primary responsibility for their own survival and a secondary responsibility to support the active partner.

The role of the South African Police cannot be accomplished without the co-operation and support of the community. It can never be performed in isolation. Therefore the police must be aware of those factors which

may cause a disruption or hinder the performance of their role in society. In this study the police role is evaluated in terms of a particular set of expectations and a direct knowledge of the way in which the role is fulfilled. No significant attempt at strengthening the relationship with the public can be made before the factors which disturb the relationship have been identified. Periodic research is absolutely necessary if one wishes to discuss the opinions and attitudes of the Indian community.

The police are trained to perform specific roles in the community. An evaluation of such roles can best be made by the community it serves.

In the present research the respondents were all Indians. The respondents were requested in a covering letter to complete the questionnaire in terms of the role played by Indian policemen (see Appendix 2). To emphasise this point the questionnaire was

also given the title :

"The role of Indian Policemen in the South African Police Force."

The aim of the questionnaire was to investigate the attitude and behavioural relationship between the resident Indian population of Metropolitan Durban and the Indian policemen of the South African Police.

The questionnaire dealt with a wide range of matters which included the following :

- a) the respondent's view about the duties of policemen;
- b) the behaviour of policemen of the kind likely to affect police-public relationship;
- c) the knowledge of the respondents regarding the duties of policemen; and
- d) the views of the respondents about the powers of the police.

C H A P T E R 9THE VIEWS AND ATTITUDES OF THE INDIAN COMMUNITY IN  
THE MUNICIPAL AREA OF DURBAN TO THE POLICE AND  
POLICE SERVICES9. Methodology and Analysis of Data9.1 The Nature of the Research

Research designs differ depending on the research purpose.<sup>1</sup> Each study has its own specific purpose for example to gain familiarity with a phenomenon or to achieve new insights into it, often to formulate a more precise research problem or to develop hypotheses.<sup>2</sup> Such studies are generally called formulative or exploratory studies.<sup>3</sup>

The present study falls into this category. The major emphasis is on the discovery of ideas and insights<sup>4</sup> they do not test or demonstrate them.<sup>5</sup> They have the purpose of formulating a problem for more precise

investigation or of developing hypotheses.

The absence of research into the role of Indians in South African Police makes it inevitable that much of the research, at least for a time to come, will be of a pioneering character. In circumstances such as these exploratory research is necessary to obtain the experience that will be helpful in formulating relevant hypotheses for more definitive investigation in the future.<sup>6</sup>

In the case of problems about which little knowledge is available, an exploratory study is usually most appropriate.<sup>7</sup>

## 9.2 Procedure in the Present Study

The police role cannot be performed in isolation. There must be a reciprocal relationship between the public and the police. It should involve a constant interaction with society. The police is the role fulfiller and the public the role assigner. In the previous chapters

of this thesis, discussions on the philosophy, organisation, administration and training were presented. These are aspects which equip policemen for their role in society. The most important consideration should be to ascertain the extent to which this role is successfully executed in society, to the satisfaction of the public or role assigner. This is the primary aim of the writer, which he hopes to achieve by a discussion of the following aspects, the information in respect of which was gathered by means of a questionnaire (see Appendix 2).

- i) the necessity of the police and its acceptance by the public;
- ii) the expectations of the research group with respect to the role performance; and
- iii) an evaluation of partnership in policing, and several other factors related to the general improvement of the police image.

The above aspects are designed to establish the following :

### 9.2.1 The Characteristics of the Research Group

The population was analysed according to : sex (question 1); language (question 2); education (question 3); age (question 4); occupation (question 5); work status (question 6); marital status (question 7); police contact (question 8).

### 9.2.2 The Acceptance of the Police Role

The justification for policing (question 9); the necessity of policing (question 10); the work of the police in terms of its importance to society (question 11); an evaluation of the methods and policing techniques used by the South African Police Force (question 12); the basis for the replies of the respondents (question 13); and an evaluation of police principles (question 14).

### 9.2.3 Role Expectations

The rating of police functions (question 15); an evaluation of the effectiveness

of police methods in crime prevention (question 16); an evaluation of the methods used in reducing the crime rate (question 17); the adequacy of police protection (question 18); and the academic qualifications necessary for officers and non-officers (question 19).

#### 9.2.4 Police-Community Relationships

Treatment received from policemen (question 20); the duty of the public in combatting crime (question 21); communication between the police and the public (question 22); the factors which encourage the public in helping the police (question 23); the honesty of the police (question 24); reasons for the answer in question 24 (question 25); and the efficiency of policemen in carrying out their duties (question 26).

#### 9.2.5 Conclusions and Recommendations

### 9.3 The Analysis of Data

The secondary aim of this study is to

discuss items 9.2.2, 9.2.3 and 9.2.4 according to the undermentioned demographic features : age, sex, education and and police contact, for the following reasons :

- a) to determine whether any of the demographic factors affect the attitudes of people;
- b) to determine whether attitudes and preferences tend to differ with increasing or decreasing age;
- c) to determine whether Indian females, who were, in the main, housewives, differed in their views in contrast to Indian males who were exposed to the external environment to a greater extent;
- d) to determine whether education is an important criterion in determining the attitude of people towards the police;
- e) police contact is of extreme importance. It is reasonable to expect that the type of contact will have a marked influence in creating attitudes. It is for this reason that certain responses were analysed

according to positive, negative and no-contact groups. This categorisation helps to compare the attitudes of the respondents.

#### 9.4 Sampling

It is a practical impossibility to have the total population included in the research. In considering the size of the sample for the present study the writer adopted the view that the sample need not necessarily be proportionate to the total Indian population in the Municipal area of Durban.

It is not the size of the sample in relation to the total population which determines the reliability of a research but whether the sample is a true representation of the population.

The method of random sampling was used as it had been proved by both theoretical reasoning and practical experience to be the most reliable method.<sup>8</sup>

For this research the Municipal Voter's Rolls for Indians were obtained. These

rolls contained a comprehensive list of names and addresses of all the registered voters over the age of 18 (eighteen) years.

In this case every member of the universum had a number. The sample was then drawn from those numbers which corresponded with the table of random numbers. This method ensured that personal preferences played no role in assembling the sample.

No research worker can claim that opinions and attitudes revealed by the sample would remain unchanged if the research group was increased to include the entire population. The sample was drawn from the following Durban districts:

- a) Durban South
  - i) Area 1 : Bayview, Havenside, Mobeni Heights.
  - ii) Area 2 : Silverglen, Croftdene, Westcliff.
  - iii) Area 4 : Merebank

- iv) Area 6 : Montford, Arena Park
- v) Area 7 : Woodhurst, Umhlatuzana, Kharwastan
- b) Durban West
  - i) Area 3 : Reservoir Hills
  - ii) Area 5 : Sydenham, Overport, Asherville

Note : The voter's rolls for the Phoenix Indian area, consisting of 3500 residents, had not been compiled at the time this research began, hence they were excluded from this research.

#### 9.5 Degree of Coverage

It was decided to choose a sample of 800 from the areas mentioned above on the following basis :

For example, in area 1 the total number of responses the writer hoped to receive was calculated as follows :

$$\frac{\text{Number of registered voters in Area}}{\text{Total number of Voters}} \times \frac{100}{1}$$

$$= \frac{8\,133}{33\,686} \times \frac{100}{1}$$

$$= \underline{24,14\%}$$

Actual number of responses expected

$$= \frac{24,14}{100} \times \frac{800}{1}$$

$$= \underline{193,12 \text{ (193)}}$$

The table below gives a break-down of the distribution of questionnaires and responses received from each area. A total of 393 (49,12 per cent) questionnaires were returned to the writer.

TABLE 1. Distribution of Questionnaires and Responses Received

Area	Number of Registered Voters		Percentage Distribution	RESPONDENTS		Percentage of Total Expected
				Total Expected	Total Received	
1	8	133	24,14	193	99 (25)	51,29
2	10	749	31,91	255	133 (34)	52,15
3	2	408	7,15	57	14 (4)	24,56
4	2	071	6,15	50	29 (7)	58,00
5	2	980	8,85	71	14 (4)	19,71
6	4	272	12,68	101	38 (10)	37,62
7	3	073	9,12	73	66 (17)	90,41
<b>Total</b>	<b>33</b>	<b>686</b>	<b>100,00</b>	<b>800</b>	<b>393</b>	<b>49,12</b>

## 9.6 Choice of Method for Gathering Information

In this study it was decided to use the questionnaire as a measuring instrument to obtain information. According to A.L. Behr<sup>9</sup> the questionnaire continues to be, if properly constructed and administered, the best available instrument for obtaining information from widely spread sources.

Care was taken to ensure that the questionnaire (see Appendix 2) did not present any difficulty to the respondents. The responses were indicated by placing a cross (X) in the appropriate space. Some questions were of the rating type, but all questions were of the closed type. An example of a closed type question is given below :

Question 26 : In performing their duties would you say that policemen are :

Highly efficient	1
Efficient	2
Inefficient	3
Highly inefficient	4
Undecided	5

An example of a rating type question is given below :

Question 15 : In your opinion, which are the most important police functions (rate in order of importance)

	Most Impt.	Very Impt.	Impt.	Less Impt.	Not Impt.
Crime Prevention	1	2	3	4	5
Law Enforcement	1	2	3	4	5
Maintenance of Order	1	2	3	4	5
Protection of Life and Property	1	2	3	4	5
Settlement of Domestic Quarrels	1	2	3	4	5

If the respondents placed more than one cross for an answer, the response to this question was disregarded. However, it appeared that the respondents followed the instructions well, and there was a negligible number who placed more than one cross to a question.

Note : In some tables which follow the total number of responses do not add up to 393 but to a figure less than 393 this indicates that some respondents did not answer that particular question.

#### 9.7 The Distribution of Questionnaires

A mail questionnaire (See Appendix 2) was used to gather the relevant data. A letter explaining the purpose of the study included instructions on how the questionnaire was to be completed. The questionnaire was posted to all the selected respondents together with a stamped self-addressed envelope. The respondents were given three weeks from the date of receipt to return

the completed questionnaires. The information was accumulated between July and September 1980.

9.7.1 The Advantages of the Postal Questionnaire

1. It was possible to cover a wider geographical area and reach a much larger population.
2. The informants were given the opportunity to answer the questions more frankly by mail.
3. Anonymity was assured in the study.
4. The questionnaires reached groups who could otherwise have been protected from investigators.
5. Some people only have antagonism for research workers and this generally leads to a refusal by the respondents to give the desired information. This was avoided.
6. The questions were standardised, whereas in

the personal interview, the research worker might alter the questions to suggest answers.

7. The postal questionnaires were answered at the convenience of the respondent which gave him/her enough time to ponder over each question.
8. Where the persons to be reached were located in widely scattered areas of cities and were a mobile element of the population, it was easier to locate them by mail than by other methods.<sup>10</sup>

#### 9.7.2 The Disadvantages of the Postal Questionnaire

1. The questions must be simple and self explanatory, since no training can be given to the informant on their meaning and on how to fill in the questionnaire.
2. An up-to-date address list of potential informants is difficult to find.
3. Mail returns from the last third of the respondents come in slowly, therefore

the mail survey must be spread over a relatively long period, if a high percentage of returns is to be secured.

4. It is practically impossible to return incomplete questionnaires to the respondents for correction. Thus, some may not have fully understood all questions. Some questions may be differently interpreted by different respondents.<sup>11</sup> However, because the advantages far outweigh the disadvantages, it was by far the best method that could have been used in this type of research.

## 9.8. Data Processing and Statistical Analysis of Results

### 9.8.1 Data Processing

There were 393 questionnaires. Each questionnaire contained 7 pages and a total of 26 questions. It was impossible to process the data manually within a reasonable time. It was therefore decided to process the data by computer. The

questionnaires were precoded and the numerical codes were transferred mechanically on to data processing sheets. The coded data was punched on to punch cards. The service of an experienced punch card operator was used. The data for each respondent was punched on a separate card. Each card, after it had been punched, was verified by the use of an automatic verifier.

A computer programme was written in the Fortran language to process the data in respect of the research group. The information was then fed into the computer and stored on Fortran magnetic discs. The programme was run on a Univac 90/30 computer.

The computer programme did not include the working of the statistical technique used in this study. Those were done manually by the use of an electronic calculator.

9.8.2 Methods of Statistically Analysing  
the Results

In dealing with the non-attitude type of responses, for example question 9, percentages were used in order to avoid distortion and bias.

For the attitude type responses the weighted mean method and percentages were used. The over-all attitude of the respondents to a particular question was measured by a score which was the mean of the sum of the weights given by the respondents. To obtain the mean, the number of responses in each category was multiplied by the appropriate numerical weightings; the products were added and the sum divided by the total number who replied to that item.

An example is given below by one such calculation.

Question : How would you describe the efforts of policemen in preventing crime?

Crime Prevention	Excellent	Good	Undecided	Poor	Very Poor	Total
Numerical Weightings	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	
No. of Responses	37	81	150	20	105	393

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Calculation of } \bar{X}_w &= (37 \times 1) + (81 \times 2) + (150 \times 3) + \\
 &\quad (20 \times 4) + (105 \times 5) \\
 &= \frac{\text{sum of products}}{\text{Number of responses}} \\
 &= \frac{37 + 162 + 450 + 80 + 525}{393} \\
 &= \frac{1254}{393} \\
 &= \underline{\underline{3,19}}
 \end{aligned}$$

In the above example the average must range between 1 and 5. The closer the average is to 1, the more positive would be the result.

Averages are calculated according to the ordinal scale. An average is calculated and placed on a continuum between the extremes for example, favourable or unfavourable, good or bad according to the item on the questionnaire. In the above example an average higher than three would indicate an unfavourable response while an average below 3 a favourable response. In the above example the average of 3,19 reflects an unfavourable image of the police as far as crime prevention is concerned.

### 9.8.3 The Analysis of Data According to the Characteristics of the Population

J. van der Westhuizen<sup>12</sup> states that a researcher may define his group qualitatively, the rationale for such delimitations or reductions perhaps being inter

alia, that he is interested in only certain sub groups within the global group. In the present study characteristics such as age, sex, education and contact groups were used to analyse certain questions only. The reasons for this has been enumerated below :

9.8.3.1 For a better police-community relationship it is probably a good idea for both sexes to know inter alia, the reasons for having a police force (question 9), and their duty in assisting the police in combatting crime (question 21). In this way both sexes would probably understand the role of the police better.

9.8.3.2 The view and attitudes of the different age groups would probably provide vital information for future policy making and planning. The respondents of the different age groups were asked about: the necessity of the police service (question 10); the efforts of the police in preventing crime (question 16); and the efficiency of

policemen (question 26). The views of the young may be of value not only to the researcher but also to the police administrator.

- 9.8.3.3 Questions regarding the work of the policeman in comparison to other jobs (question 11), and the educational qualification necessary for policemen (question 19) were analysed according to the educational groups of the respondents namely, primary, secondary and tertiary groups. It is probably useful to ascertain what each educational group feels should be the qualifications of policemen.
- 9.8.3.4 Respondents were asked : Do you think your personal liberty and privacy are threatened by the methods and techniques of the South African Police Force? (question 12), and "Do you receive fair and just treatment from policemen? (question 20). Both questions were analysed according to contact groups. Questions such as these would probably be better answered by respondents

who had made some contact with the police.

#### 9.8.3.5 Questions 13 and 25

Both questions required the respondents to give reasons for their attitude reflected in questions 12 and 24. Since the Indians form a closely knit community and public opinion plays an important role, the questions were chosen to discover whether the respondents depended on what people said to them. In both cases this was really not so as attitudes were based on the influence of press, radio or T.V. reports and by personal observation.

### 9.9 The Analysis of the Research Group

#### 9.9.1 Demographical Characteristics

N. Parten<sup>13</sup> states that regardless of the type or purpose of the research, a few basic facts about the informants must be secured e.g. age, sex, language and occupation.

9.9.1.1 Sex

Table 2 : Distribution of the Sexes  
in the Sample

Sexes	N	Percentages in the Research
Males	286	72,77
Females	107	27,23
Total	393	100,00

There was a greater number of males than females in the sample i.e. over two and a half times more males than females. This may probably be due to males, as heads of households, having the responsibility to attend to correspondence.

9.9.1.2 Language

Table 3 : Distribution of the Respondents according to Language Groups

Languages	N	Percentage in the Research
Hindi	56	14,25
Tamil	74	18,83
Telegu	34	8,65
Urdu	41	10,43
Gujurati	50	12,73
English	133	33,84
Afrikaans	4	1,02
Other	1	0,25
Total	393	100,00

The above table indicates that over one third of the respondents spoke English as this is the predominant language spoken by Indians in Natal. Tamilians formed the second largest group (18,33 per cent) followed by Hindustanis (14,25 per cent). A probable reason for the large number of English speaking respondents (33,84 per cent) in the research could be due to inter alia, the Westernisation of Indians in South Africa.

#### 9.9.1.3 Education

Table 4 : The Distribution of the Respondents according to Educational qualifications

Qualification	N	Percentage in the Research
Up to Standard 6 (primary)	55	14,03
Standard 7-8 (secondary)	73	18,62
Standard 9-10 (secondary)	166	42,35
Diploma	55	14,03
Degree	43	10,97
Total	392	100,00

From the above table it emerges that 42,35 per cent of the respondents had received either Standard 9 and 10 qualification. Those in possession of the Standard 7 and 8 certificate constitute 18,62 per cent. Respondents with primary school education and the Diploma made up 14,03 per cent each and only 10,97 per cent possessed the degree.

#### 9.9.1.4 Age

Table 5 : The Distribution of Respondents by Age

Age	N	Percentage in the Reserach
18 - 24 years	136	34,61
25 - 29 years	54	13,74
30 - 34 years	52	13,23
35 - 39 years	41	10,43
40 - 44 years	42	10,69
45 - 49 years	21	5,34
50 - 54 years	22	5,60
55 - 59 years	14	3,56
60 + years	11	2,80
Total	393	100,00

The sample was represented by all age groups ranging from 18 to over 60 years. Those between 18 and 39 years represented 72,01 per cent of the sample. Respondents whose ages range between 40 and 60 + years constituted only 27,99 per cent of the sample. The highest number of respondents were from the 18 - 24 years age group and made up 34,61 per cent of the sample. Thus more than one third were young persons (between 18-24 years).

#### 9.9.1.5 Occupation

Table 6 : The Distribution of Respondents by Occupation

Occupation	N	Percentage in the Research
Professional, Technical	89	22,65
Manager Official, Proprietor, Trader	55	13,99
Clerical, Secretarial, Salesworker	70	17,81
Craftsman, Foreman, Mechanic	25	6,36
Machine Operator, Driver	30	7,63
Domestic Worker, Service Worker, Police Navy	16	4,07
Farmer, Warehouseman, Labourer	14	3,56
Other	94	23,93
Total	393	100,00

The sample consisted of people of various occupational groups. At least 23,92 per cent of the respondents held occupations not listed on the questionnaire, for example, waiter, housewife, student and packer. The second largest percentage of respondents (22,65 per cent) belonged to professional and technical staffs. A smaller percentage (17,81 per cent) held clerical, secretarial, and sales work. The other occupational categories were represented by small percentages. Only 13,99 per cent of the respondents were employed as managers, officials, proprietors and traders.

9.9.1.6 Work Status

Table 7 : The Work Status of the Respondents

Work Status	N	Percentage in the Research
Employed	224	57,00
Unemployed	28	7,12
Retired	13	3,31
Permanently disabled	6	1,53
Housewife	24	6,10
Student	94	23,92
Other	4	1,02
Total	393	100,00

Fifty seven percent of the respondents were employed, while 23,92 percent were students. Those falling in the other categories of work constituted a small percentage of the sample (19,08 percent).

#### 9.9.1.7 Marital Status

Table 8 : The Marital Status of the Respondents

Marital Status	N	Percentage in Research
Married	191	48,60
Widowed	25	6,36
Divorced	19	4,83
Separated	9	2,29
Single	149	37,92
Total	393	100,00

The highest number of respondents were married, and comprised 48,60 percent, while 37,91 percent were single. The widowed, divorced and separated persons constituted only 13,49 percent of the population.

#### 9.9.1.8 Police Contact

If contact with the police is to be measured, it is necessary that contact be defined. For the purpose of this analysis "contact" indicates those situations in which a face-to-face relationship was established. A positive contact with the police includes those respondents who were complainants, witnesses in court cases and informers. A negative contact includes those respondents who had been in contact with the police as accused and convicted, accused and acquitted, suspected or interrogated. No contact implies those who have not established any contact with the police. It is possible that the type of contact made with the police could be instrumental in creating specified attitudes in people.

Table 9 : The Nature of Contact of the Respondents

Nature of Police Contact	N	Percentage in Research	
<u>Negative Contact</u>			
Accused and found guilty	14	3,58	} 18,67
Accused but not found guilty	39	9,97	
Arrested and questioned	20	5,12	
<u>Positive Contact</u>			
Complainant	103	26,34	} 28,39
Informer	8	2,05	
<u>For other reasons</u>	23		5,88
<u>No Contact</u>	184		47,06
Total	391		100,00

From the table above over 47,06 percent of the respondents had no contact with the police, while 52,94 percent had some contact with the police which was either positive or negative. Since the type of contact could possibly have an influence on the attitude of the respondents, it must be noted that of those who had contact a much greater percentage of respondents had positive contact with the police.

9.10 The Acceptance of the Police Role

9.10.1 The Justification for the Existence of South African Police Force

Policing is a social service.<sup>14</sup> It forms one of the corner-stones of an orderly society<sup>15</sup> and is concerned inter alia, with health, domestic problems, errands and other administrative duties (see chapter 2 and 4 of this thesis). the smooth functioning of the total social system is facilitated by the juridicial, political and religious sub-systems, but

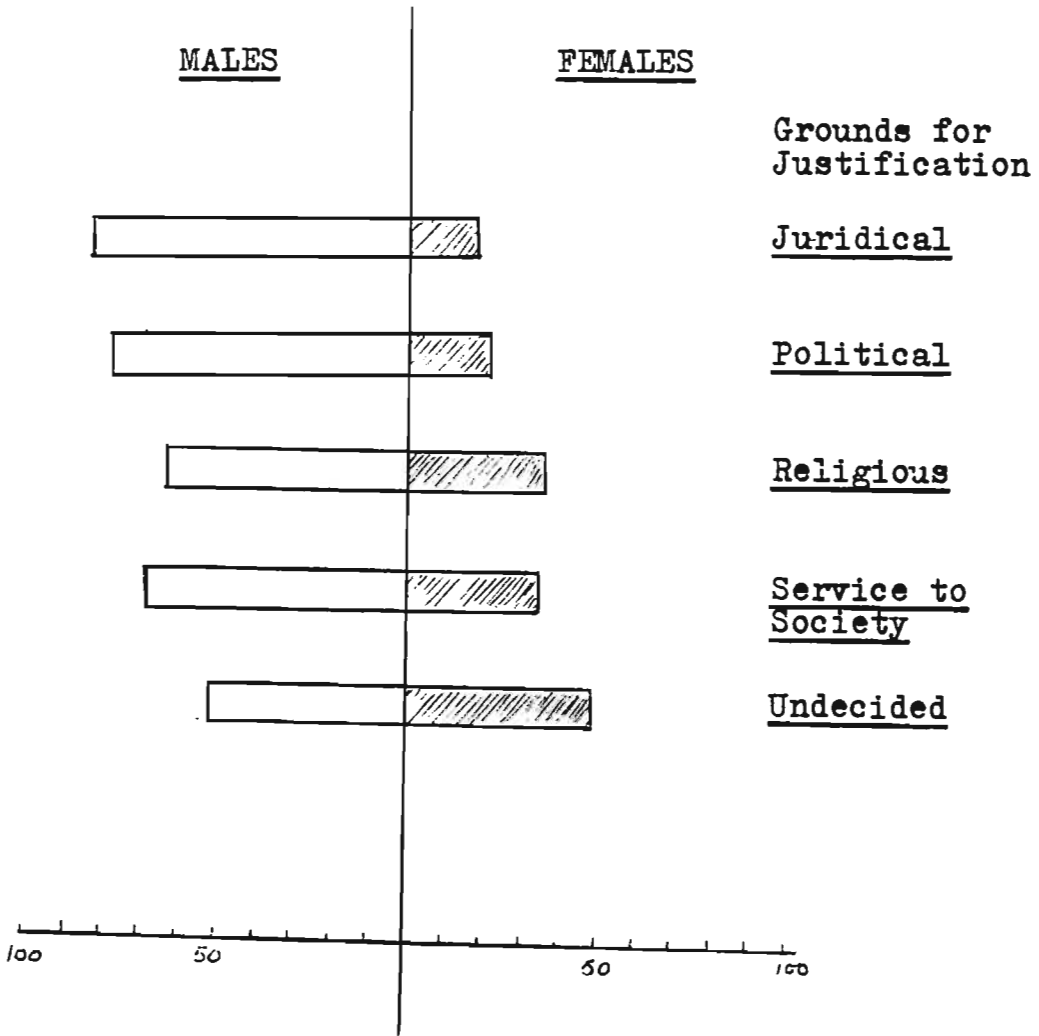
none of these sub-systems can be considered the real basis for the justification of the police role in society.<sup>16</sup>

According to Table 10 below, service to society is accepted by the research group as the most important justification for the existence of the South African Police Force. The acceptance of the South African Police Force on these grounds is in accordance with the philosophical basis of policing.

Table 10 : The Justification for the Existence of the South African Police Force

Grounds for Justification	S E X						Percentage of Research Group
	Males		Females		Total		
	N	%	N	%	N	%	
Juridicial	91	82,72	19	17,28	110	100,00	27,99
Political	11	78,57	3	21,43	14	100,00	3,56
Religious	7	63,64	4	36,36	11	100,00	2,80
Service to Society	166	69,75	72	30,25	238	100,00	60,56
Undecided	10	52,63	9	47,37	19	100,00	4,83
Other	1	100,00	-	-	1	100,00	0,26
<b>Total</b>	<b>286</b>	<b>72,77</b>	<b>107</b>	<b>27,23</b>	<b>393</b>	<b>100,00</b>	<b>100,00</b>

JUSTIFICATION FOR THE EXISTENCE OF THE  
SOUTH AFRICAN POLICE FORCE  
ACCORDING TO THE SEXES



A breakdown of Table 10 indicates that while the majority (60,56 percent) justified the existence of the South African Police Force on the grounds that the Force provides a service to society, 27,99 percent justified the existence of the Force on juridicial grounds. These are the two main reasons advanced by the research group for the justification of the Force. The remaining reasons were : on political grounds (3,56 percent), and on religious grounds (2,80 percent). Only 0,26 percent stated that the Force existed for other reasons and 4,83 percent were undecided.

A further observation was that Indian females rated service to society higher (69,75 percent) than Indian males (30,25 percent). This is probably due to the fact that Indian females are in the main housewives, and are more vulnerable, therefore value the services of the police more than Indian males. The male being the stronger of the two sexes may not be exposed to the dangers which may be

experienced by his female counterpart. Crime in the Indian community is centred around the male population.<sup>17</sup> Men are probably more conscious of the juridicial aspect and have rated it much higher (82,72 percent) than women (17,28 percent).

#### 9:10.2 The Necessity for Police Service

The Police Force exists to provide a service to the community which include inter alia, law enforcement and social service.

Crime is a serious social problem. It is directly or indirectly a threat to every member of society, because it is destructive to the victim, the offender and his family. Further, it is destructive to the stability, tranquility and good order of society. Unless it is checked effectively, it can escalate and seriously endanger and disrupt the maintenance of law and order in society.<sup>18</sup>

The statistics presented in Table 11 represent the opinions of the research group according to age categories.

Table 11 : The Necessity for Police Services : An Analysis according to Age Groups

Age Groups in Years	Absolutely Necessary		Necessary		Uncertain		Unnecessary		Absolutely Unnecessary		Total	
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%
18 - 29	57	30,00	70	36,84	19	10,00	28	14,74	16	8,42	190	100,00
30 - 39	50	53,77	31	33,33	4	4,30	6	6,45	2	2,15	93	100,00
40 - 49	36	57,14	18	28,58	2	3,17	5	7,94	2	3,17	63	100,00
50 +	33	70,21	11	23,40	2	4,26	0	-	1	2,13	47	100,00
Total	176	44,79	130	33,08	27	6,87	39	9,92	21	5,34	393	100,00

77,87 %
6,87 %
15,26 %

An analysis of the above data reveals that the majority of respondents (77,87 percent) gave positive replies and only 15,26 percent gave negative replies. An even small percentage (6,87 percent) were neutral in their responses. There seems to be a slight tendency (8,42 percent) among the respondents between the ages 18 to 29 years to view the police as absolutely unnecessary. A slightly greater percentage (10,00 percent) also appears to be undecided as to whether the police are necessary or not in society.

The majority of respondents (70,21 percent) among those who are 50 years and over are of the opinion that the police are absolutely necessary.

It can be further observed that with the increasing age of the respondents, police services are regarded as absolutely necessary.

From the foregoing it appears that the research group see the necessity for the police in society.

9.10.3 The Importance of the South African  
Police in Society

In September 1981 R.A.F. Swart<sup>19</sup> stated in Parliament that "there is a growing friction and increased threats to our society. Under these circumstances the status of the Police Force within our society is of vital significance."

The research group hold similar views. From the statistical data presented in Table 12 it appears that 91,05 percent of the respondents have given positive ratings to the importance of Police work in Society and only 6,39 percent negative ratings. A very small percentage (2,56 percent) of the respondents were uncertain.

Of the positive responses 29,41 percent rated policing to be about as important as other jobs, 26,85 percent as much more important, 22,00 percent as important and 12,79 percent as more important. The research group has probably placed importance in varying degrees

Table 12 : The Importance of the South African Police in Society

Standard of Education	Much more Important		Somewhat more Important		About as Important		Important		Less Important		Much less Important		Uncertain		Total	
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%
Primary	36	66,67	5	9,26	6	11,11	5	9,26	1	1,85	1	1,85	-	-	54	100,00
Secondary	56	23,43	35	14,64	67	28,03	60	25,11	10	4,18	6	2,52	5	2,09	239	100,00
Tertiary	13	13,27	10	10,20	42	42,86	21	21,43	5	5,10	2	2,04	5	5,10	98	100,00
Total	105	26,85	50	12,79	115	29,41	86	22,00	16	4,09	9	2,30	10	2,56	391	100,00

91,05%

6,39%

2,56%

to policing knowing that the losses suffered through crime in terms of manpower, material effects and hard cash, and its destructive effects on human life, dignity and social stability is incalculable.

Respondents with primary education indicate that the work of the police is much more important than other jobs in society (66,67 percent).

Although all the educational groups showed a positive attitude while the higher educated appear to be more negative in their responses. The tertiary group has a slightly more negative attitude towards the importance of the police than the secondary and primary groups.

It also appears from Table 12 that the tertiary group tends to be slightly more uncertain about the importance of the work of the police than the secondary and primary groups.

Perhaps the foregoing indicates that the higher the educational achievements of the respondents the less they value the work of the policemen.

Most probably the reason for this is that most Indians have for a long time regarded policing as an inferior service.<sup>20</sup> Its isolation and air of secrecy has turned the service into a closed unit.

It is further noted that the uncertainty of the secondary and tertiary educational groups may probably be due to the lack of contact these groups have with the police or even ignorance of the work done by the police.

In general the research group as a whole accepts the police role as one of the most important roles in society.

#### 9.10.4 The Threat to Personal Liberty and Privacy of the Methods and Techniques used by the South African Police Force

The methods and techniques used by the South African Police Force are regarded by some individuals as a threat to their personal liberty and privacy. In the context of this research, the methods and techniques in policing refers to all those reactionary aids

and conduct employed by the Force in the prevention and repression of crime with the object of maintaining order. It must be remembered that the authority of the police is restricted to actions associated with the maintenance of social order. The police have no legislative or judicial powers.

Table 13 : The Attitude of the Contact Group to the Methods and Techniques used by the South African Police

Contact Groups	Threat to Personal Liberty and Privacy													
	Definitely		to a large extent		to a lesser extent		Total		Uncertain		not at all		Total Group	
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%
Negative	23	31,51	11	15,07	12	16,44	46	63,02	5	6,84	22	30,14	73	100,00
Positive	11	10,00	21	19,09	29	26,36	61	55,45	11	10,00	38	34,55	110	100,00
No-Contact	40	21,85	22	12,02	48	26,33	110	60,20	21	11,48	53	28,42	184	100,00
Other	8	32,00	3	12,00	4	16,00	15	60,00	-	-	7	40,00	22	100,00
Total	82	20,97	57	14,58	93	23,79	232	59,34	37	9,46	119	31,20	389	100,00

⏟
⏟
⏟

59,34%
9,46%
31,20%

A total of 59,34 percent of the research group feel that the methods and techniques used by the South African Police are a threat to their personal liberty and privacy. Only 9,46 percent appeared to be uncertain and 31,20 percent felt that the methods and techniques used by the South African Police were not a threat to their personal liberty and privacy.

A greater percentage (11,48 percent) of the no-contact group were uncertain than the positive group (10,00 percent).

Further a greater percentage (63,02 percent) of the negative group than the positive group (55,45 percent) viewed the methods and techniques used by the police as a threat to their personal liberty and privacy.

The writer is of the opinion that the methods and techniques used by the police are part of the police function, therefore they should be in line with the basic principles of policing and individual democratic rights. If there

are any methods or techniques used by the South African Police which are considered a threat, it is suggested by the writer that they be revised for the sake of maintaining sound social relationships in an attempt to build up the partnership with the community in keeping social order.

9.10.5 Factors Influencing the Attitude of the Respondents regarding the Methods and Techniques used by the South African Police

In recent years the public has accused the police of being a threat to their personal liberty and privacy by the methods and techniques which they use. This accusation has been openly stated in the press.

(Refer: South African Digest, Government Printer, Pretoria, 30 January 1981, pp. 24-26.)

The purpose of questions 13 and 25 was to discover those aspects which have influenced the attitude of the respondents towards the South African Police. A friendly attitude predisposes to co-operation, proximity and generosity ; a respectful attitude towards

obedience, and an aggressive attitude towards rudeness and injury. Attitudes and knowledge are inseparable. Attitudes can be thoroughly evaluated if the knowledge of the respondents is taken into account.

With reference to 9.10.14 (the above section) the respondents were asked to state whether their answer to question 12 was based on any one or more given responses. If a respondent marked more than one item, he stated the most important reason by indicating it with a 1, the second most important by a 2 and so on. Table 14 indicates the different responses received from the research group :

TABLE 14 : ATTITUDE FORMING RESPONSES BASED ON QUESTION 12

Attitude Forming Experiences	Responses Received from the Respondents of the Most Important Influence	
	N	%
Newspapers, Radio and T.V.	21	4,45
What other people say	115	24,42
What has been observed	180	38,22
Personal Experience	155	32,91
Total	471	100,00

A SCHEMATIC REPRESENTATION OF THOSE FACTORS  
WHICH HAVE INFLUENCED THE ATTITUDES  
OF THE RESPONDENTS

1	2	3	4	5
---	---	---	---	---

1. Newspapers, Radio and Television Reports
2. What other people say
3. What has been observed
4. Personal experience
5. Undecided

The purpose of asking this question was to ascertain whether the recent boycotts at schools and in the industrial sector could have influenced the attitudes of the respondents.

The above table reflects the most important influence that had a bearing on the attitudes of respondents regarding the methods and techniques used by the South African Police.

It appears from Table 14 that personal observation (38,22 per cent) was the most important reason for the respondents believing that their personal liberty and privacy was being threatened by the methods and techniques used by the South African Police.

Of the remaining respondents 32,91 per cent indicated that what they had observed influenced their opinion, 24,42 per cent stated that they were influenced by what other people said and only 4,45 per cent were influenced by the media (newspapers, radio and T.V.).

There were 471 responses received from 393 respondents this indicates that some respondents believed that other reasons mentioned were equally important.

#### 9.10.6 Police Principles

The organisational structure of the police is fulfilled in accordance with the framework of certain guidelines or principles. If the role of the police is fulfilled in such a way that it deviates from the established principles then not only the individual policeman or the police institution but the whole of the power structure incurs suspicion.

For the present study seven basic principles were given to the research group for their rating. These are principles which Indians are presumed to be conversant with.

The third principle in the question was given the highest rating namely, that policemen

must have a perfect command of their temper. In support of this principle R. Lewis<sup>21</sup> stated that Sir Robert Peel, a pioneer English policeman stressed that "... there is no qualification so indispensable to a police officer as perfect command of temper, never suffering himself to be moved in the slightest degree by any language or threat." The average response was 1,72 indicating that the research group considers this principle to be very important.

It appears from Table 15 that the research group regard the selection and training of suitable people to be prerequisites for an effective police force. The average response for this principle was 1,84. G.G. Killinger and P.F. Cromwell<sup>22</sup> state that police work requires policemen to continually see the tragedy of victimized citizens and "the sordid lives of the reprehensible and unfortunate elements of the community... if he is prejudiced or hot-headed, he may succumb to his anger or resentment," if he

Table 15 : The Importance of Police Principles

Police Principles	Most Important		Very Important		Important		Less Important		Not Important		Total		$\bar{X}_w$	Rating
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%		
1. The police force must be stable, efficient and organised along military lines	132	33,93	88	22,62	74	19,02	50	12,86	45	11,57	389	100,00	2,46	6
2. The absence of crime and disorder will best prove the efficiency of the police	115	29,56	84	21,59	94	24,16	46	11,83	50	12,86	389	100,00	2,57	7
3. Policemen must have a perfect command of their temper	203	51,92	111	28,38	62	15,86	12	3,07	3	0,77	391	100,00	1,72	1
4. The selection and training of suitable people are pre-requisites for an effective police force	180	46,04	120	30,69	70	17,90	15	3,84	6	1,53	391	100,00	1,84	2
5. Police stations should be to all people	174	44,50	88	22,51	92	23,53	30	7,67	7	1,79	391	100,00	2,00	3
6. To be effective in the control and prevention of crime the police must be able to secure the willing co-operation of the public	155	39,54	113	28,83	89	22,70	26	6,63	9	2,30	392	100,00	2,04	4
7. The use of compulsion and physical force in achieving police objectives should be avoided	139	35,55	74	18,92	93	23,79	45	11,51	40	10,23	391	100,00	2,42	5

is not properly trained and of the highest calibre. This principle was rated second on the list.

The third highest rating was given to the fifth principle in the question : "Police stations should be accessible to all people." The average response was 2,00. B.N. Nagle<sup>23</sup> supports this view stating that police stations must be centrally situated, or easily reached and readily identifiable by all. He adds that police stations should be located in areas that are served by public transportation which would encourage the public to come to the facility.

Also regarded as very important was the belief of the respondents that to be effective in the control and prevention of crime the police must be able to secure the willing co-operation of the public. This principle was rated fourth and the average response was 2,04.

Fifth, the use of compulsion and physical

force in police objectives should be avoided as far as possible. The average response of 2,42 suggests that the general opinion of the research group is, that this principle is also very important.

The principle that the police force must be stable, efficient and organised on military lines was rated sixth with an average response of 2,46. The writer regards stability, efficiency and organisation as interdependent and therefore should not be viewed in isolation.

Seventh, "the absence of crime and disorder will best prove the efficiency of the police" was given the lowest rating with the average response of 2,57.

#### 9.11 Role Expectations

Society has entrusted the police with the authority to ensure the safety of all its citizens. Therefore, the citizens have a right to expect protection against bodily

injury, damage to property or its loss as well as protection of their constitutional rights.

In modern society the police role is one which is both coercive and non-coercive in nature. The coercive function includes the enforcement of laws, keeping the peace, tracking and apprehending offenders. The non-coercive function includes crime prevention, securing individual rights of liberty and privacy and other remote social services which contribute towards maintaining social stability.

The expectations of the police role are contained in a broad framework of functions which are both coercive and non-coercive.

Usually misunderstanding between the police and the community with regard to role expectations lead to dissatisfaction, conflict and a general decline in co-operation. A breakdown in relationships may be created by a failure on the part of the role performer to comply with the expectations of the role

assigner. There can also be the feeling of the clientele that the police is a bully of the State who endangers life and abuses his authority.

The expectations of the police role are contained in a broad framework of functions of the South African Police which is outlined in the Police Act, Act No. 7 of 1958.

#### 9.11.1 The Most Important Functions of the South African Police

The basic mission for which the police exist is for the prevention of crime and disorder. Therefore the goal of the police is to ensure the absence of crime and disorder.

G.G. Killinger and P.F. Cromwell<sup>24</sup> advocated that the most important function of the police is crime prevention. The police is the only organisation that exists for the specific purpose of combatting crime. The views of the research group is reflected in Table 16. The respondents were required to rate five police functions in order of

importance.

Crime prevention is one of the fundamental objectives of the police. This function has been given the highest rating by the research group with an average response of 1,57. Prevention is a positive approach to criminality and aims at minimising motivational and situational factors which may lead to anti-social behaviour.

Protection of life and property has been rated second with an average response of 1,91. The respondents appear to give this police function a fairly high rating probably because of the dangers society faces against subversive elements and the threat to life and property resulting from the increasing crime rate.

The maintenance of order has been rated third with an average response of 2,15. The reactionary measures taken by the police in the maintenance of social order are known as repressive policing. This includes the

action taken by the police after a crime has been committed to restore disrupted order. The reactionary measures include the executive functions of the police : the enforcement of laws, investigation of crime and tracing and apprehending criminals. From the data in Table 16, it appears that the research group values preventive policing more than repressive policing. Law enforcement as a police function has been rated fourth with an average response of 2,32.

The police are sometimes burdened with duties not directly concerned with the maintenance of order. However, these duties do contribute to making life in the collectivity more bearable. The respondents appear to have given a low rating for the settling of domestic quarrels. This function was rated fifth with an average response of 3,71.

J.L.Sullivan<sup>25</sup> and T.J. van Heerden<sup>26</sup> maintain that crime prevention is an

Table 16 : The Most Important Functions of the South African Police as rated by the Respondents

Police Functions	Most Important		Very Important		Important		Less Important		Not Important		Total Group		X̄W	Rating
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%		
1. Crime Prevention	233	59,44	102	26,02	51	13,01	2	0,51	4	1,02	392	100,00	1,57	1
2. Protection of Life and Property	198	50,64	77	19,69	80	20,46	27	6,91	9	2,30	391	100,00	1,91	2
3. Maintenance of Order	115	29,34	142	36,22	107	27,30	16	4,08	12	3,06	392	100,00	2,15	3
4. Law Enforcement	103	26,34	128	32,74	105	26,85	40	10,23	15	3,84	391	100,00	2,32	4
5. Settlement of Domestic Quarrels	23	5,91	49	12,60	82	21,08	97	24,94	138	35,47	389	100,00	3,71	5

important function of the police and emphasis on crime prevention is a healthy trend and the fundamental purpose of policing.

9.11.2 An Assessment of the Efforts of the Police in Preventing Crime

In section 9.10.2 of this chapter it was observed that the research group regarded police services necessary. This was an indication of the confidence and trust of the respondents in the South African Police. The respondents were asked to evaluate the efforts of the police in preventing crime. The views of the respondents are outlined in the following Table:

Table 17 : An Evaluation of the Efforts of the Police in Preventing Crime

Ages in Years	The Efforts of the Police in Preventing Crime											
	Excellent		Good		Satisfactory		Poor		Undecided		Total	
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%
18 - 29	12	6,32	38	20,00	63	33,16	68	35,78	9	4,74	190	100,00
30 - 39	7	7,53	25	26,88	44	47,31	15	16,13	2	2,15	93	100,00
40 - 49	10	15,87	10	15,87	25	39,68	15	23,82	3	4,76	63	100,00
50 and over	8	17,02	8	17,02	18	38,30	7	14,89	6	12,77	47	100,00
Total	37	9,41	81	20,61	150	38,17	105	26,72	20	5,09	393	100,00

68,19 %

26,72 %

5,09 %

The majority of respondents think positively of the efforts of the police in preventing crime. The majority represented 68,19 per cent of the research group. A small percentage (26,72 percent) were negative in their attitude and only 5,09 percent were undecided.

A breakdown of the responses in terms of age groups indicate that those respondents in the 18-29 years age group (59,48 per cent) hold positive views. Those who hold negative views were in the minority (35,78 percent) only 4,74 percent were neutral.

In the age group 30-39 years a very large percentage of respondents (81,72 percent) gave positive replies, 16,13 percent were negative in their replies and 2,15 percent were undecided. From the above table it can be observed that this group appears to be far more appreciative of the police efforts in preventing crime than any other age group.

The majority of respondents in the 40-49 year age group (71,42 percent) gave positive responses 23,82 percent gave negative responses and only 4,76 percent were undecided.

Of those respondents who were in the over 50 years age group 72,34 percent gave positive responses, 14,89 percent negative responses and 12,77 percent were undecided.

### 9.11.3 Police Protection in Specific Indian Areas

Respondents were asked whether they received adequate police protection in their areas. This question yielded a variety of answers.

Area 1 included Bayview, Havenside and Mobeni Heights. The majority of respondents (73,74 percent) in this area gave positive replies and 22,22 percent responded negatively. A small percentage (4,04 percent) remained undecided.

In area 2 which included Silverglen, Croft=

Table 18 : Police Protection in Specific Areas

Areas in the Municipal Area of Durban	Definitely		To a large extent		To a lesser extent		Total		Not at all		Undecided		Total Group	
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%
1. Bayview, Havenside Mobeni Heights	7	7,08	24	24,24	42	42,42	73	73,74	22	22,22	4	4,04	99	100,00
2. Silverglen, Croft- dene, Westcliff	12	9,02	24	18,05	59	44,36	95	71,43	29	21,80	9	6,77	133	100,00
3. Reservoir Hills	4	28,57	3	21,43	6	42,86	13	92,86	1	7,14	-	-	14	100,00
4. Merebank	1	3,45	7	24,14	12	41,38	20	68,97	8	27,58	1	3,45	29	100,00
5. Sydenham, Overport Asherville	1	7,14	5	35,72	6	42,86	12	85,72	1	7,14	1	7,14	14	100,00
6. Montford Arena Park	5	13,16	4	10,53	8	21,05	17	44,74	20	52,63	1	2,63	38	100,00
7. Woodhurst Umhlatuzana Kharwarstan	7	10, 61	14	21,21	17	25,76	38	57,58	24	36,36	4	6,06	66	100,00
Total	37	9,41	81	20,61	150	38,17	268	68,19	105	26,72	20	5,09	393	100,00

Positive

Negative

Neutral

dene and Westcliff the largest percentage of respondents (71,43 percent) gave positive responses while 21,80 percent replied negatively and 6,77 percent were undecided.

Area 3 was Reservoir Hills. The response from this area was most encouraging. A total of 92,86 percent replied positively and only 7,14 percent indicated that they are not receiving adequate police protection.

Area 4 Merebank. The majority of respondents (68,97 percent) indicated that they received adequate police protection. Those who responded negatively constituted only 27,58 percent of the total number of respondents of that area. A small percentage 3,45 percent remained undecided.

Area 5 included the following areas : Sydenham, Overport and Asherville. The positive responses were in the majority (85,72 percent), the negative responses and those who were undecided were in the minority (7,14 percent each).

Montford and Arena Park (Area 6) was the only area with the largest percentage of negative responses (52,63 percent) and a minority (44,74 percent) gave positive replies. Only 2,63 percent of the respondents in this area were undecided.

In Area 7 which included Woodhurst, Umhlatuzana and Kharwastan, 57,58 percent replied positively, 36,36 percent replied negatively and 6,06 percent were undecided.

The responses received from the total research group was positive (68,19 percent), a small percentage (26,72 percent) were negative in their replies and 5,09 percent remained neutral

#### 9.11.4 The Effectiveness of Police Methods in Reducing the Crime Rate

R. Mark<sup>27</sup> once remarked that one of the essential requirements of a truly democratic police system is that, whilst adhering to certain basic principles, it should be capable of adaptation to meet

the requirements of different societies or communities.

In the present study the respondents were asked to rate the effectiveness of certain police methods which they (the respondents) thought would be effective in reducing the crime rate. The ratings are reflected in the table below.

Table 19 : Requirements for Effective Policing

Police Methods	Very Effective		Effective		Total		Uncertain		Ineffective		Very Ineffective		Total		Total Group		X̄W	Rating
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%		
1. Introduce more police patrols	218	55,61	110	28,06	328	83,67	8	2,04	36	9,19	20	5,10	56	14,29	392	100,00	1,80	1
2. Increase the number of Indian policemen	104	26,66	149	38,21	253	64,87	42	10,77	47	12,05	48	12,31	95	24,36	390	100,00	2,45	5
3. Give immediate attention to complaints	205	52,69	121	31,11	326	83,80	17	4,37	28	7,20	18	4,63	46	11,83	389	100,00	1,80	1
4. Establish more police stations	177	45,38	121	31,03	298	76,41	20	5,13	47	12,05	25	6,41	72	18,46	390	100,00	2,03	4
5. Reintroduce the foot patrol	167	42,71	143	36,57	310	79,28	21	5,37	41	10,49	19	4,86	60	15,35	391	100,00	1,98	3

The respondents were required to rate five police methods. An analysis of the findings reveals that policing can become effective if more police patrols were introduced and if the police could give immediate attention to complaints from people. Both these methods were given the highest rating.

The method of introducing more police patrols obtained an 83,67 percent response from the respondents, 2,04 percent were neutral and only 14,29 percent of the respondents gave negative responses.

There was a slight variation with the responses obtained. Respondents felt that to give immediate attention to complaints would be effective. The majority of respondents (83,80 percent) gave positive responses, 11,83 percent gave negative responses and only 4,37 percent were neutral. Both these responses obtained an average of 1,80 which indicated that the methods were effective.

The reintroduction of the foot patrol was rated 3rd on the list. The majority of respondents (79,28 percent) responded positively and 15,35 percent responded negatively. A small percentage (5,37 percent) were neutral. The average of 1,98 indicated the average opinion that the foot patrol was an effective method of policing.

The establishment of more police stations was rated fourth. A large majority of respondents (76,41 percent) responded positively while 18,46 percent responded negatively, 12,05 percent remained neutral. The average of 2,03 indicated that this method was thought to be effective.

An increase in the number of policemen was rated fifth although many citizens feel that by increasing the number of policemen the crime rate would decrease. The finding in this research shows that it is less important, but it indicates that the respondents have recognised the fact that

it is the calibre of policemen which is more important than mere numbers. A total of 64,87 percent of the respondents held positive views on this issue and a smaller percentage (24,36 percent) held negative views, 10,77 percent were neutral. The average of 2,45 indicates that the feeling of the respondents is that it is an effective method.

#### 9.11.5 Educational Qualification for Indian Policemen

L.V. Harrison<sup>28</sup> mentioned that to police a community is personal service of the highest order requiring sterling qualities in the individual who performs it. Policemen are compelled under circumstances to make instantaneous decisions - often without clearcut guidance from the legislative, the judiciary or from departmental policy - and mistakes in judgement could cause irreparable harm to citizens, or even to the community. Therefore educational qualifications do play an important role in policing. The following

table outlines the educational qualifications that respondents in this research would prescribe for officers and non officers.

#### 9.11.5.1 Qualification for Officers

An analysis of Table 20 reveals that the majority of respondents of the primary group (44,44 percent) suggest that officers should possess a standard 10 certificate; 22,22 percent suggest a diploma; 14,82 percent suggest a degree; 11,11 percent suggest standard 8 and there are still respondents who feel policemen possess the standard 6 certificate and they comprise only 7,41 percent of the respondents. There is a tendency for this group to feel that officers should should acquire a standard 10 certificate or higher qualification and they comprise a substantial percentage of this group - 81,48 percent.

The majority in the secondary group have indicated that officers should possess a diploma (33,33 percent); 29,87 percent

Table 20 : Education Qualifications Suggested for Officers according to the Educational Qualifications of the Respondents

Educational Qualification of Respondents	S T A N D A R D S										H I G H E R E D U C A T I O N				Group Total	
	6		7		8		9		10		Diploma		Degree			
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%
Primary	4	7,41	-	-	6	11,11	-	-	24	44,44	12	22,22	8	14,82	54	100,00
Secondary	-	-	-	-	18	7,79	3	1,30	64	27,71	77	33,33	69	29,87	231	100,00
Tertiary	-	-	-	-	2	2,04	-	-	12	12,25	33	33,67	51	52,04	98	100,00
Total	4	1,04	-	-	26	6,79	3	0,78	100	26,11	122	31,86	128	33,42	383	100,00

suggested a degree; 27,71 percent the standard 10 certificate and 9,09 percent suggested qualification lower than standard 10.

The tertiary group tends to feel that higher qualification is necessary for officers. The majority of respondents of this group believe that officers should possess a degree, they comprise 52,04 percent of this group; 33,67 percent suggest a diploma; 12,25 percent suggest standard 10 and 2,04 percent suggest a standard eight qualification.

An important observation is that the higher the educational qualification of the respondents, the higher were their educational requirements for officers.

#### 9.11.5.2 Qualification for Non-Officers

The majority of respondents in the primary group indicated that non-officers should possess a standard 10 certificate. They comprised 42,59 percent of the group; 33,

Table 21 : Educational Qualifications Suggested for the non-officers  
According to the Educational Qualifications of the Respondents

Educational Qualification of Respondents	S T A N D A R D S										HIGHER EDUCATION				Group Total	
	6		7		8		9		10		Diploma		Degree			
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%
Primary	5	9,26	3	5,55	9	16,67	1	1,85	23	42,59	9	16,67	4	7,41	54	100,00
Secondary	11	4,78	0	-	49	21,30	10	4,35	78	33,91	68	29,57	14	6,09	230	100,00
Tertiary	0	-	0	-	9	9,28	2	2,06	35	36,08	44	45,36	7	7,22	97	100,00
Total	16	4,20	3	0,79	67	17,58	13	3,41	136	35,70	121	31,76	25	6,56	381	100,00

33 percent of the respondents indicated that they should have qualifications below standard 10 ; 16,67 percent suggested a diploma and 7,41 a degree.

A large percentage of the respondents in the secondary group (33,91 percent) have indicated that non-officers should possess a standard 10 certificate; 30,43 percent indicated that they should have qualifications below a standard 10; and 35,66 percent suggested they have higher qualification than a standard 10.

The tertiary group have indicated than non-officers should have qualification higher than a standard 10, they were represented by 38,32 percent of the respondents; 35,70 percent suggested standard 10 and 25,98 percent suggested that non-officers have qualifications lower than standard 10.

9.12 Police-Community Relationships

9.12.1 Treatment Received by the Respondents  
from the South African Police

Fair and just treatment is necessary for a harmonious relationship between the police and the community especially when processing citizen complaints. Any programme instituted by the police for the improvement of community relations will have little enduring effect if the citizens do not feel that they are treated justly by the police. This is particularly true of persons who, because of their frequent contact with the police, are aware of police practices.<sup>29</sup> The respondents in the present research have expressed their viewpoint as follows :

Table 22 : An Evaluation of the Treatment received by the Citizens from Policemen in the South African Police According to Contact Group

	Degree of Fair and Just Treatment Received												Total Group	
	Always		Often		Sometimes		Total		Undecided		Never			
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%
Negative	7	9,59	11	15,07	31	42,47	49	67,13	6	8,22	18	24,65	73	100,00
Positive	10	9,09	19	17,27	59	53,64	88	80,00	3	2,73	19	17,27	110	100,00
No-Contact	10	5,44	42	22,83	63	34,24	115	62,51	39	21,19	30	16,30	184	100,00
Other	1	4,35	3	13,04	9	39,13	13	56,52	1	4,35	9	39,13	23	100,00
Total	28	7,18	75	19,23	162	41,54	265	67,95	49	12,56	76	19,49	390	100,00

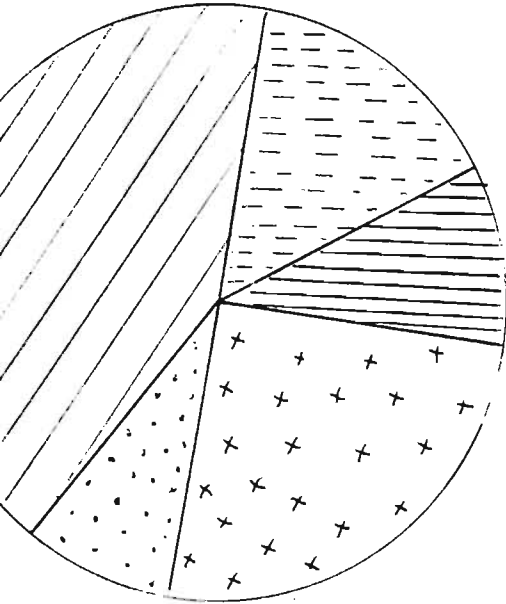
67,95 %

12,56 %

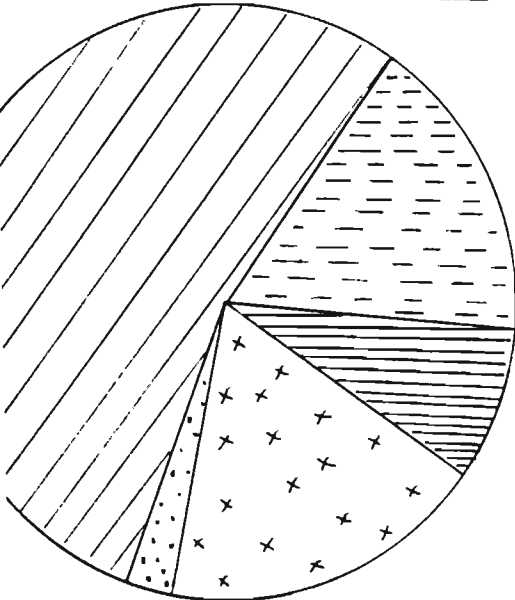
19,49 %

FAIR AND JUST TREATMENT AS RECEIVED BY  
THE RESEARCH GROUP

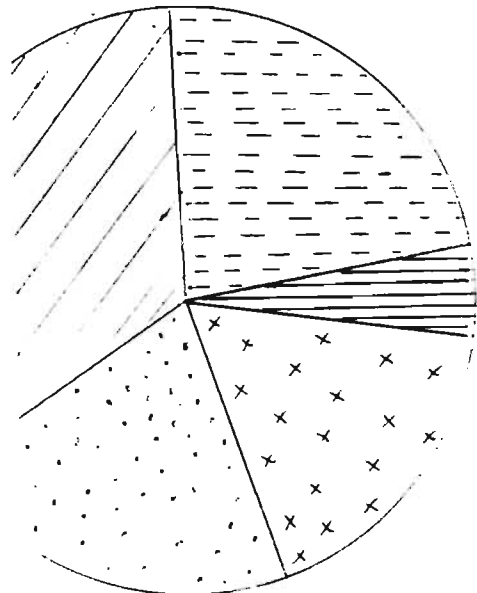
NEGATIVE-CONTACT GROUP



POSITIVE-CONTACT GROUP



NO-CONTACT GROUP



KEY

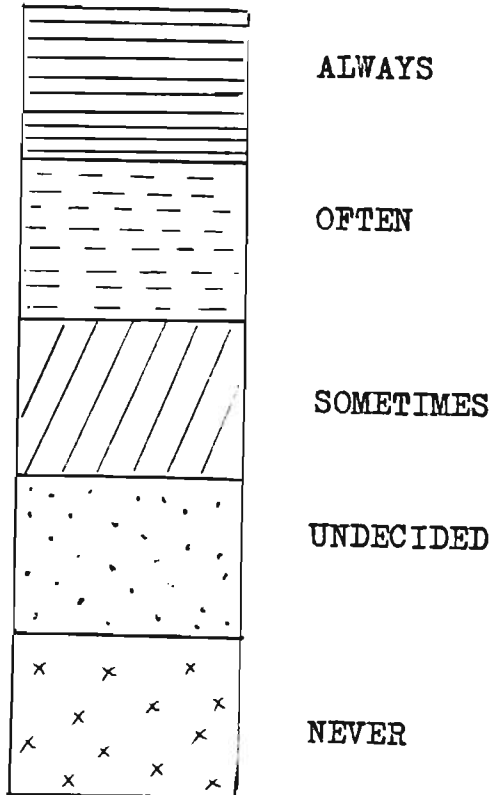


Table 22 indicates that 67,95 percent of the total number of respondents felt that they have received fair and just treatment from the police. Negative responses only comprised 19,49 percent of the total population while 12,56 percent were neutral. A breakdown of these responses into contact groups shows that the most favourable response was received from the positive contact group which indicated by a majority of 80 per cent that they had received fair and just treatment from the police, as compared to 17,27 percent who held negative attitudes and 2,73 per cent who were undecided.

Although one would expect the negative contact group to hold negative views, this has been disproved by the fact that 67,13 percent of those respondents thought of the police and the treatment received from them on positive lines. A substantially lower percentage (24,65) than the positive contact group held negative views and only 8,22 percent were

neutral.

The largest number of respondents (i.e. 184 of 390) had no contact with the police. Their responses were mainly positive (62, 51 percent). Of the total, 16,30 percent gave negative replies and a greater percentage (21,19 percent) were undecided.

Other respondents who did not fall into any of the specified groupings revealed a positive attitude (56,52) while a larger percentage (39,13 percent) than the other groups mentioned above held negative views. Only 4,35 percent were undecided.

#### 9.12.2 The Role of the Community in Crime Prevention

The community and the police have an important role to play in preventing crime. The fact that society has delegated its powers to the police does not relieve it (society) of the primary duty of ensuring its own safety. When both partners (that

is, community and police) realise that they will benefit from a community relations programme they agree that it is a joint responsibility. From this joint responsibility emanates the maxim : "The police are the public and the public the police". "The police are the public" is one side of the coin. "The public are the police" is the other side.<sup>30</sup> We realise that the two sides cannot be separated without losing their value. The following table indicates the opinion of the respondents regarding their duty in assisting the police to combat crime:

Table 23 : The Opinion of the Respondents regarding their Duty in assisting the Police to Combat Crime

Sexes	Duty of Respondents to Help the Police to Combat Crime											
	Definitely		To a large extent		To a lesser extent		Not at all		Undecided		Total Group	
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%
Males	113	39,65	89	31,23	50	17,54	19	6,67	14	4,91	285	100,00
Females	32	29,91	32	29,91	20	18,69	17	15,89	6	5,60	107	100,00
Total	145	36,99	121	30,87	70	17,86	36	9,18	20	5,10	392	100,00

85,72 %
9,18 %

The majority of males (88,42 percent) and females (78,51 percent) feel that it is their duty to assist the police in combatting crime. Also evident is the fact that a greater percentage of females (15,89 percent) than males (6,67 percent) feel negatively about this issue. Only, 5,10 percent were undecided on this issue.

It is further evident from the table above that a greater percentage of males than females are positively inclined to help the police to prevent crime. This difference may probably be due to the fact that Indian females are in the main housewives and this does not permit most women to give the police the assistance they (the police) need to combat crime.

### 9.12.3 Role Fulfilment

The writer is of the opinion that a mere evaluation of police efficiency can present a somewhat distorted picture of the police image. According to R. Mayet,<sup>31</sup> to measure

the image of the police by means of efficiency alone would amount to a disregard of the basic principles through which the police role in a democracy should be fulfilled.

If policing succeeds in curbing crime and preventing disorder and in this way does not deviate from the basic principles nor create a rift in the partnership or cause a breakdown in the relationship with the public then there can be no doubt of its efficiency.

The Indian people by virtue of their cultural upbringing are very sensitive to violence, harsh treatment and impoliteness. Any form of rude behaviour generally meets with their disapproval. As this aspect is of great importance to police-community relationships, the respondents were asked to rate the actions of policemen in face-to-face situations. The following table reflects the ratings given by the respondents:

Table 24 : The Degree of Conduct of Policemen when Handling Complaints

Conduct Situations	The degree of conduct of Policemen when handling complaints												Total			
	Very Good		Good		Total		Undecided		Bad		Very Bad		Total		Group	
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%
The way they talk to you	37	9,49	119	30,51	156	40,00	97	24,88	91	23,33	46	11,79	102	35,12	390	100,00
The way they treat you	27	6,92	87	22,31	114	29,23	129	33,08	95	24,36	52	13,33	147	37,69	390	100,00
The way they handle your complaints	31	7,89	74	18,83	115	26,72	127	32,32	113	28,75	48	12,21	161	40,96	393	100,00
The way they make arrests	38	9,79	64	16,50	102	26,29	124	31,96	96	24,74	66	17,01	162	41,75	388	100,00

Table 24 indicates that the way policemen talk to people when handling their complaints is viewed favourably by the respondents. Forty percent of the respondents stated that it was either good or very good, and 35,12 percent gave negative replies. Of the total number of respondents (390), 24,88 percent were undecided. With regard to those who have given negative replies, the writer is of the opinion that if there are communication problems when dealing with complaints, this could lead to relationship problems which would in turn lead to a poor image of the police. The large percentage who had given negative replies is a cause for concern.

As far as the handling of complaints is concerned it appeared that of those who had responded (393) to this question 40,96 percent responded negatively, 26,72 percent gave positive replies and 32,32 percent were undecided. As the majority of respondents have indicated the way policemen

handled complaints ranged from bad to very bad indicates that this most probably is a factor which gives the police a bad image. Further investigation in this area of police procedure in handling complaints is necessary.

The respondents regard the way police make arrests unfavourably. A break down of positive and negative responses shows that the largest number of respondents (41,75 percent) feel that the way the police make arrests ranged from bad to very bad and only 26, 29 per cent indicated that it was very good to good. A large percentage (31,96 percent) of respondents were undecided. Further research into the procedure of making arrests needs to be made for the sake of improving the policing image.

The treatment people receive from the police also gives cause for concern. More respondents have indicated that the treatment they received from policemen ranged from bad to very bad by the largest number of respondents

(37,69 per cent). Of those who had given positive replies (29,23 percent), 6,92 percent stated that the treatment they received from policemen was very good and 22,31 percent indicated that it was good. A large percentage (33,08 percent) were undecided.

The external occupational environment of the policeman is not confined to the four walls of the office or to any definite area. It cuts through all aspects and levels of human existence in the psychic and social environment, where the diverse stimuli makes a constant contribution to the realisation of the primary goal. The social scene is like a stage upon which the police role is played by the policeman as an actor. This "stage" is the focus for the reciprocal stimulation of actor and audience. Factors such as courtesy, respect shown for human dignity and the way in which people are addressed may all make lasting impressions upon the

observer. The respondents were asked to state whether they thought the conduct of policemen encouraged or discouraged community assistance. The following table illustrates the views of the respondents:

Table 25 : Community Assistance to the South African Police Force

	Actions of the Police which Encourage or Discourage Community help							
	Definitely Stimulates Assistance		Undecided		Definitely Discourages Assistance		Total Group	
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%
Respondents	105	26,72	131	33,33	157	39,95	393	100,00

The above table indicates that the majority of respondents feel that the conduct of policemen would definitely discourage assistance. This fact was revealed by 39,95 percent of the total respondents. A slightly smaller percentage (33,33 percent) remained neutral while 26,72 percent of the respondents stated that the present conduct of the policemen definitely stimulates assistance.

#### 9.12.4 Police Honesty

To police a community is personal service of the highest order, requiring sterling qualities in the individual who performs it. There are very few professions which are so particularly charged with individual responsibility as the Police Force.

There are numerous complexities which are inherent in the policing function, which indicate that policemen should possess inter alia, impartiality and honesty. G. G. Killinger and P.F. Cromwell<sup>32</sup> state that a police organisation would suffer

in reputation and society would pay the bill when policemen are dishonest. The police service offers unusual opportunities and temptations to indulge in various forms of dishonesty. Successful police service is predicated on the integrity, morality and fairness of the members of the Force.<sup>33</sup>

The attitude of the respondents is reflected in the undermentioned table:

Table 26 : The Honesty of Policemen According to Educational Groups

Educational Group	Unquestionably Honest		Usually Honest		Total		Undecided		Usually Dishonest		Unquestionably Dishonest		Total Group		
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	
Primary	12	21,82	28	50,91	40	72,72	10	18,18	4	7,27	1	1,82	55	100,00	
Secondary	16	6,70	107	44,77	123	51,47	34	14,23	54	22,59	28	11,71	239	100,00	
Diploma	2	3,64	20	36,36	22	40,00	9	16,36	18	32,73	6	10,91	55	100,00	
Degree	1	2,32	12	27,91	13	30,23	12	27,91	10	23,26	8	18,60	43	100,00	
Total	31	7,91	167	42,60	198	50,51	65	16,58	86	21,94	43	10,97	392	100,00	
		50,51%				16,58%				32,91%					

The above table indicates that most respondents (50,51 percent) are of the opinion that the police are honest. Those who believe that the police are usually dishonest account for 32,91 percent of the respondents. Only 16,58 percent were undecided.

The majority of the respondents (72,72 percent) of the primary education group were of the opinion that the police were honest. Those who held negative views were in the minority (9,09 percent) and 28,28 percent were undecided. It is assumed by the writer that many of those with low education are usually settled in poor neighbourhoods where the police is often seen. Hence the views of this groups should be viewed as having some significance.

The majority of the secondary group (51,47 percent) have indicated that policemen are honest. Negative responses accounted for 34,30 percent of the respondents. Only 14,23 percent were undecided.

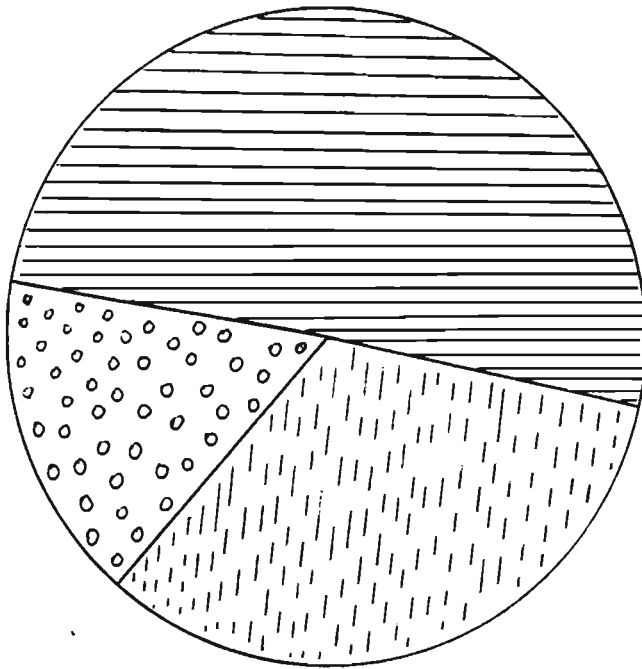
The greatest number (239) of the respondents fell in the secondary groups.

There were only 55 respondents who possessed a diploma; of these 40 percent indicated that the police were honest, 16,36 percent were undecided and 43,64 percent believed the police to be usually dishonest. Of significance to this group was the fact that the greatest percentage of respondents held negative views about the honesty of the police.

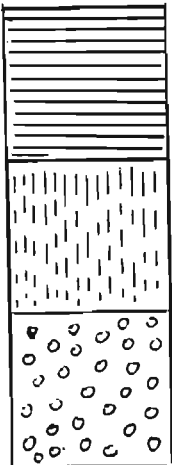
The highest number of respondents (41,86 percent) with a degree were of the opinion that the police were usually dishonest to unquestionably dishonest; 27,91 percent were undecided and only 30,23 percent indicated that the police were unquestionably honest to honest.

A significant feature of the table was that, the higher the educational qualification of the respondents, the less positive was their attitude towards the honesty of policemen. This most probably implies that the higher

THE RESPONSE OF THE RESEARCH GROUP  
REGARDING THE HONESTY OF  
INDIAN POLICEMEN



KEY



Positive Responses (50,51 percent)

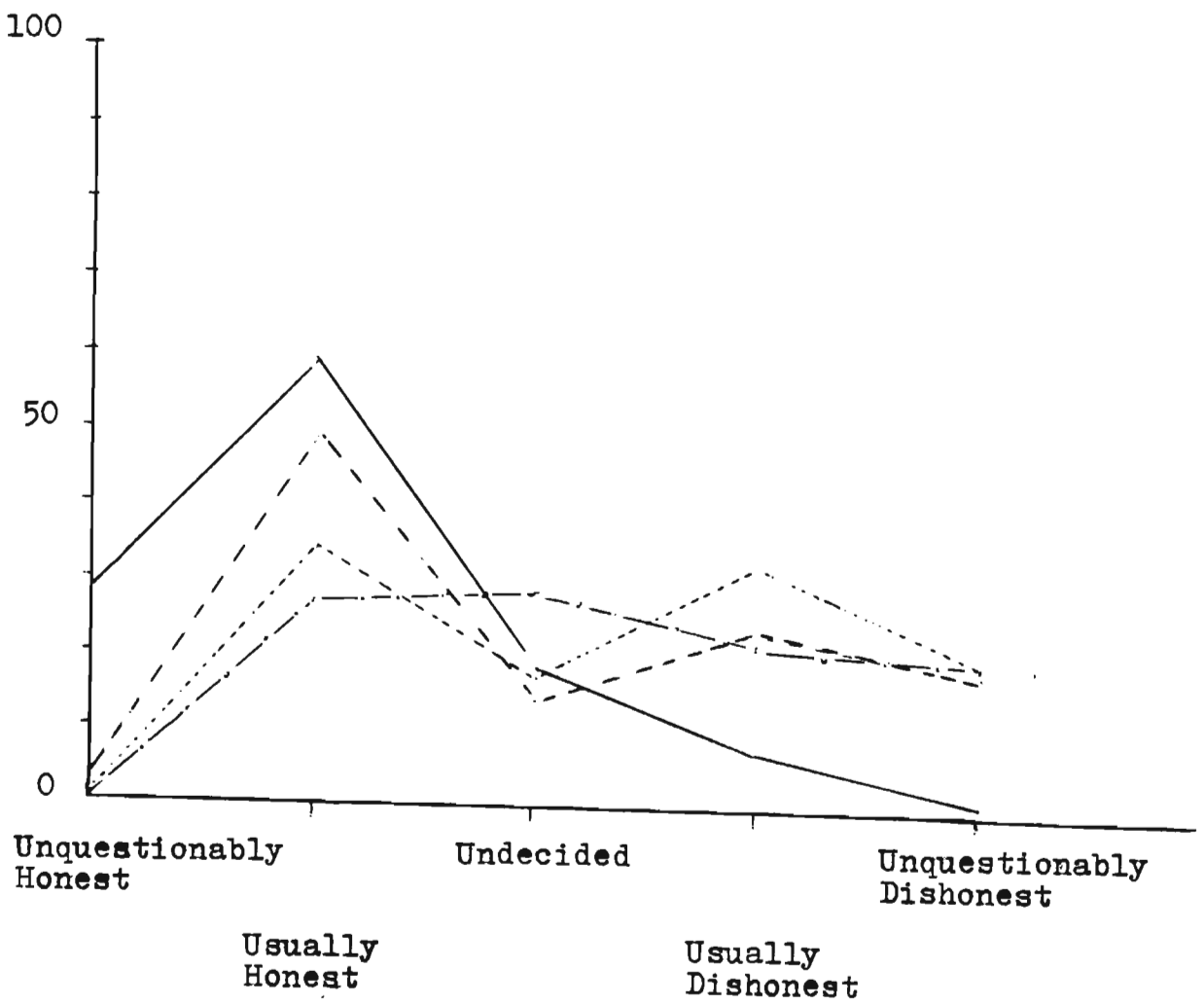
Negative Responses (32,91 percent)

Neutral Responses (16,58 percent)

THE HONESTY OF INDIAN POLICEMEN  
AS SEEN BY THE RESPONDENTS  
OF THE VARIOUS EDUCATIONAL  
GROUPS

KEY

- PRIMARY GROUP
- SECONDARY GROUP
- ..... DIPLOMA
- - - - - DEGREE



the educational level of the respondents, the more affluent they may probably be, therefore the policeman is subjected to greater temptations in his dealings with them.

The attitude to the above questions could have been formed in various ways. The following table reveals some of the ways in which the respondents formulated their attitudes :

Table 27 : Attitude forming Experiences according to Educational Groups with Reference to Table 26

Educational Group	Personal Experience		Personal Observation		Press Radio & T.V.		What people say		Other Reasons		Group Total	
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%
Primary	23	41,82	13	23,64	9	16,36	8	14,55	2	3,63	55	100,00
Secondary	63	26,36	114	47,70	37	15,48	25	10,46	-	-	239	100,00
Diploma	18	32,73	24	43,64	4	7,27	6	10,90	3	5,46	55	100,00
Degree	14	32,56	17	39,53	4	9,30	7	16,28	1	2,33	43	100,00
Total	118	30,10	168	42,86	54	13,78	46	11,73	6	1,53	392	100,00

The majority of respondents (42,86 percent) have indicated that their attitudes were formed through personal observation.

Others formed their attitude through:- personal experience (30,10 percent); press, radio and T.V. (13,78 percent); by what other people say (11,73 percent); and for other reasons (1,53 percent).

The primary education group formed their attitudes mainly through personal experience (41,82 percent) and personal observation (23,64 percent). The other attitude forming experiences were of minor significance.

The secondary education group consisting of the greatest number of respondents (239) formulated their attitude by personal observation (47,70 percent); personal experience (23,36 percent); and to a lesser extent through the press, radio and T.V. (15,48 percent) and by what other people say (10,46 per cent).

Those with a diploma formulated their

attitude firstly by personal observation (43,64 percent); secondly, personal experience (32,73 percent); thirdly, by what people say (10,90 percent); fourthly by the press, radio and T.V. (7,27 percent); and fifthly for other reasons (5,46 percent).

The degree group formulated their attitudes mainly by personal observation (39,53 percent); by personal experience (32,56 percent); by what people say (16,28 percent); press, radio and T.V. (9,30 percent) and for other reasons (2,33 percent).

An important observation is that the primary education group formed their attitudes about policemen mainly through personal experience. This, mostly probably, is due to the fact that with a low education and consequently a low socio-economic status, they become more vulnerable to crime. Hence, their conclusions are based mainly on personal experience with policemen.

The secondary, diploma and degree groups, most probably because of their higher educational qualification and most probably higher socio-economic status are less vulnerable to crime and personal experiences with policemen, have drawn their conclusions about policemen and their honesty by personal observation.

#### 9.12.5 The Efficiency of Policemen

E.N. Davis<sup>34</sup> writes that "the test of police efficiency is the absence of crime and disorder, not the visible evidence of police action in dealing with them". The escalating crime rate and the general unrest does not give the police a good image in this respect. The undermentioned tables outlines the views of the respondents about the efficiency of the South African Police Force :

Table 28 : The Efficiency of the South African Police as Perceived by the different Age Groups

Age in Years	Highly Efficient		Efficient		Total		Undecided		Inefficient		Highly Inefficient		Total		Total Group	
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%
18 - 29	15	7,89	63	33,16	78	41,05	31	16,32	48	25,26	33	17,37	81	42,63	190	100,00
30 - 39	5	5,43	39	42,39	44	47,82	18	19,57	23	25,00	7	7,61	30	32,61	92	100,00
40 - 49	6	9,52	28	44,44	34	53,96	6	9,53	21	33,33	2	3,18	23	36,51	63	100,00
50 +	5	10,64	24	51,06	29	61,70	7	14,89	8	17,02	3	6,39	11	23,41	47	100,00
Total	31	7,91	154	39,29	185	47,20	62	15,82	100	25,51	45	11,47	145	36,98	392	100,00

47,20 %

15,82 %

36,98 %

The table above indicates that the majority of the respondents have indicated that the work of the policemen ranged from efficient to highly efficient (47,20 percent). The negative responses totalled 36,98 percent and those who were undecided made up only 15,82 percent of the respondents.

It is noteworthy that the respondents in the age group 18-29 years hold a negative view of the efficiency of the South African Police Force. The negative responses totalled 42,63 percent and the positive responses 41,05 percent. Only 16,32 percent of the respondents were undecided. The writer is of the opinion that the view of this group could be based on lack of observation and experience with policemen. The views of the other groups mentioned below differ with the opinions of the 18-29 year group.

With the 30-39 year group the majority of respondents (47,82 percent) believe that policemen are efficient while 32,61 percent

feel policemen are inefficient, only 19,57 percent of the respondents remained neutral.

Those respondents in 40-49 year group have indicated by their responses (53,96 percent) that policemen are efficient in their work and a smaller percentage (36,51 percent) have indicated that policemen are inefficient in their work. Only 9,53 percent remained undecided.

Those respondents in the over 50 years category have indicated by the responses given (61,70 percent) that the police are efficient, while, 23,41 per cent gave negative responses and 14,89 percent were undecided.

A significant feature of the above table is that as the age of the respondents increase the percentage of positive responses also tends to increase. This is not the case with the negative responses. The negative responses tended to decrease with increasing age except for the 30-39 year group. This phenomenon is

most probably due to the appreciation of police services by the older group.

9.13. Summary of the most Important Conclusions

9.13.1 Acceptance of the Police Role

9.13.1.1 Service to society is accepted by the research group as the most important justification for the existence of the South African Police Force. Indian females rate service to society higher than males.

9.13.1.2 The respondents consider police service as a necessity. With increasing age there is a greater awareness of the necessity for police services.

9.13.1.3 The work of a policeman is accepted as being as important as other jobs. Respondents with primary school education regard policing to be much more important than other jobs.

9.13.1.4 The methods and techniques used by the South African Police Force are regarded as a threat to the personal liberty and privacy of the respondents. The majority of respondents

based their conclusions on what they had observed (38,22 per cent).

9.13.1.5 The three police principles of greatest importance to the respondents are:

- a) Policemen must have a perfect command of their temper.
- b) The selection and training of suitable people for the South African Police Force must be prerequisite for an effective Police Force.
- c) Police stations must be accessible to all people.

9.13.2 The Role Expectations of the Research Group

9.13.2.1 The respondent rate;

- a) crime prevention;
- b) protection of life and property; and
- c) maintenance of law and order as the three most important functions of the police.

- 9.13.2.2 The efforts of the South African Police in crime prevention was viewed positively by the research group. The age group 30-39 years is far more appreciative of the efforts of the police in preventing crime than other age groups.
- 9.13.2.3 The majority of the respondents in all the areas included in this research except for area 6 feel positively about police protection in their area.
- 9.13.2.4 The three most important methods by which the crime rate could be reduced are, in order of importance :
1. to have more police patrols and to give immediate attention to complaints; and
  2. to re-introduce large scale footpatrols.
- 9.13.2.5 The educational qualifications suggested by the majority of respondents for officers in the South African Police is a Degree and non-officers the Standard 10 Certificate.

9.13.3 Police-Community Relationships

- 9.13.3.1 It has been expressed by the positive and negative contact groups that they generally receive fair and just treatment from the police.
- 9.13.3.2 Most respondents have indicated that they have a duty to assist the police in combatting crime.
- 9.13.3.3 The majority of respondents felt that the conduct of policemen definitely discourages assistance from the community.
- 9.13.3.4 Most in the research group feel that policemen are honest.
- 9.13.3.5 The sample based their attitudes mainly on personal observation of the police.
- 9.13.3.6 The work of the policeman ranged from efficient to highly efficient.

REFERENCES

1. Selltitz, C., et al : Research Methods in Social Relations, Methuen and Co., Ltd., England, 1967, p. 50.
2. Ibid.
3. Ibid.
4. Ibid. pp. 55-65.
5. Ibid.
6. Ibid.
7. Ibid.
8. Ary, D. : Introduction to Research in Education, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, N.Y., 1972, p. 16.
9. Behr, A.L. : Methods and Techniques in Psychological and Educational Research, J.L. van Schaik Ltd., Pretoria, 1973, p. 11.
10. Parten, M. : Surveys, Polls and Samples, Practical Procedures, Harper and Row, N.Y., 1965, p. 94.

11. Ibid., p. 95.
12. Van der Westhuizen, J. : An Introduction to Criminological Research, University of South Africa, Pretoria, 1977.
13. Parten, M. : op. cit., pp. 391-392.
14. Van Heerden, T.J. : Introduction to Police Science, Study Manual No. 2, University of South Africa, Pretoria, 1976, p. 14.
15. Schaffer, E.G. : Community Policing, Croom Helm, London 1980, p.18.
16. Van Heerden, T.J. : op. cit., p. 14.
17. Midgley, J., Steyn, J.H. & Graser, R. : Crime and Punishment in South Africa, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Johannesburg, 1975, p. 69.
18. Steyn, J.H. : Crime and its Control,

reprinted from Acta Juridica,  
Juta and Company Ltd., 1971,  
pp. 167-204.

19. House of Assembly : Debates of the Standing Committee on the Appropriation Bill : Vote No. 12 - "Police" , The Government Printer, Pretoria, 10 September, 1981.
20. Van Heerden, T.J. : op. cit., p. 17.
21. Lewis, K. : A Force for the Future, Temple Smith, London, 1976, p. 28.
22. Killinger, G.G. : Issues in Law Enforcement, and Holbrook Press Inc., Boston, Cromwell, P.F. 1975, p. 240.
23. Nagle, B.N. : "Considerations in Constructing or Renovating Police Facilities", F B I Law Enforcement Bulletin, No. 4., Volume 46, 1977, p. 9.
24. Killinger, G.G. : op.cit., p. 242.  
& Cromwell P.F.

25. Sullivan, J.L. : Introduction to Police Science, 2nd edition, Mcgraw-Hill Book Co., U.S.A., 1966, p. 167.
26. Van Heerden, T.J. : op.cit. p. 152.
27. Mark R. : Policing a Perplexed Society, George Allen and Unwin Ltd., London, 1977, p. 34.
28. Harrison, L.V. : cited by Killinger, G.G. and Cromwell, P.F. : op. cit., p. 133.
29. Ibid. p. 238.
30. Ibid. p. 204.
31. Mayet, R. : The Role and Image of the South African Police in Society from the Point of View of the Coloured People in Johannesburg, unpublished M A disser=

tation, University of  
South African, 1976, p. 148.

32. Killinger, G.G.: op. cit., pp. 133-134  
& Cromwell P.F.
33. Ibid. p. 142.
34. Davis, E.M. : cited by Killinger, G.G.  
and Cromwell, P.F. op.  
cit. p. 207.

S E C T I O N DCONCLUSIONS, RECOMMENDATIONS AND SUMMARYCHAPTER 1010.1 Conclusion

Sections A and B of this thesis is a socio-historical study of the role of Indian policemen in the South African Police Force. Section C is an exploratory study of the attitudes and opinions of a sample of Indian respondents. The writer did not intend to make sweeping generalisations from the results of this research. The recommendations offered are merely suggestions.

Since the police provide a wide variety of services to the public, not all the factors which come into play could possibly be discussed in a research such as this. The factors which are discussed hereunder are those which are considered to be the most important in goal achievement.

It must be pointed out that the views of the police were not considered.

It is hoped that the recommendations presented may probably assist to enhance sound relationships between the police and the community. Some of the more important findings in this exploratory

research concerning Indian policemen showed a tendency for:

- 10.1.1 The majority of respondents (60,56 percent) to accept the South African Police Force as providing an important service to society. The importance of policing as an occupation and its necessity indicates the pride of place given to police work by most (77,87 percent) of the respondents.
- 10.1.2 Most of the respondents (59,34 percent) to regard the methods and techniques used by the police as a threat to their personal liberty and privacy. It is sometimes inevitable that extreme measures are resorted to, to maintain order and to ensure the safety of the role performer (police). A problem may arise when these measures become routine behaviour patterns. This could lead to a break-down in police-community relationships.
- 10.1.3 The majority of respondents (98,98 percent) to feel positively about the role played by the police in crime prevention. This is a function which cannot be carried out in isolation. The support of the community is vital and necessary. When partners realise that they can benefit from reciprocal relationships it is bound to promote sound police-community relationships.

- 10.1.4 A large percentage (67,95 percent) of the respondents to hold positive views of the treatment received from the police. These respondents indicated that they received fair and just treatment from the police. Impartial treatment is part of the basic principle of policing in a democratic society. It appears that there is a tendency for Indian policemen to comply with this principle, thereby obtaining public favour.
- 10.1.5 Most of the respondents (85,72 percent) to confirm that they have a duty to help the police in combatting crime. It is encouraging to note that the respondents realise that although society has delegated this task to the police, this does not relieve them (the respondents) of their primary duty of ensuring their own safety. Arising out of this, it is probably correct to assume that a strong partnership exists between Indian policeme and the respondents.
- 10.1.6 A fairly large percentage (47,20 percent) of the respondents to regard Indian policemen in the South African Police Force to be efficient. However, a small percentage (7,91 percent) of the respondents were of the opinion that the police were highly efficient in their work.

10.1.7 At least half (50,51 percent) of the respondents regard the police as honest. This most probably has encouraged co-operation from the respondents and has instilled them (the respondents) with confidence in the police.

## 10.2 Recommendations

### 10.2.1 Methods and Techniques used by the Police

The methods and techniques used by the police are viewed unfavourably by the majority (59,34 percent) of the respondents. This calls for a thorough investigation by the authorities of the police organisation.

The methods and techniques used by the police in a democratic society should conform to the basic principles of policing. Irregularities should be checked. Amongst other things, consideration should be given to the manner in which arrests are made, confrontation when a citizen is suspected or questioned, and the methods used during the investigation of a crime.

### 10.2.2 Control of Temper

The majority of respondents (94,23 percent) have indicated that policemen must have a perfect command of their temper. It is extremely difficult for a policeman to maintain his

composure in all situations even though this is expected and demanded of him. It is important that a policeman should always live with the prospect of being attacked without warning. Even if an officer is highly efficient the people with whom he may deal may cause him to become disillusioned and angry. If policemen are not adequately trained they may succumb to anger and physically or verbally abuse someone who offends them.

Such behaviour could give a bad image of the police, and policemen could be stereotyped as being hot-headed and impatient. Although it is departmental policy that every policeman who behaves in a riotous or an unseemly manner commits an offence (S.A.P. Regulations 58(18)), it is necessary that this important aspect is not overlooked during police training. It must be emphasised that the capability of a policeman, and particularly of one who works in high crime areas, to act as far as possible in a restrained manner, is constantly tested.

### 10.2.3 Crime Prevention

Besides being one of the most important functions of the police, crime prevention has been recognised and rated as an important function by the majority of the respondents (98,98 percent). It is recommended that in areas which have high crime rates a greater number of policemen should be on crime prevention duties than in areas with

low crime rates. The occasional "raid" by policemen does not always serve its purpose since criminals may get a tip off and move to other areas to avoid the police. It is suggested therefore, that the omnipresence of policemen in high crime rate areas would deter would-be offenders from committing crimes. These suggestions may probably assist to strengthen the present attempts of the police to combat crime.

#### 10.2.4 Police Patrols

The majority of respondents (83,67 percent) in the research group regard police patrols as an important method of reducing the crime rate. They have indicated that more patrols should be introduced to deter the would-be offender. It is suggested that mechanised patrols be alternated with foot patrols where possible. The need for more police patrols may probably arise from the fact that police stations in certain Indian areas like Chatsworth and Phoenix in Durban are too far removed from other residential areas where criminals usually find their hide-outs. It is strongly recommended that more police patrols be organised for operation in densely populated Indian areas.

#### 10.2.5 Complaints

A large majority of respondents (83,80 percent) in the research group have pointed out that an effective method

of policing would be for the police to give immediate attention to complaints. A poor service may be related to short staffing in the police force which invariably does not have a sufficient number of policemen available. Although a police station may have a large staff not all the men are on duty at the same time. Policemen in a station are divided into shifts and at each shift various duties are allotted to members besides attending to the complaints lodged by the members of the public. It may, therefore, happen that at any given time only a limited number of policemen are available for patrolling and to attend to complaints. The respondents may not be aware of some of these problems hence they expect prompt attention to be given to their complaints. It is recommended that investigation into this problem be undertaken by the police authorities.

#### 10.2.6 Academic Qualifications

The majority of respondents have set high academic standards for members of all ranks in the police force (Refer Table 20/21). Presently, the requirement for recruitment is the matriculation certificate, which has received the support of the respondents (35,70 percent). This requirement is the standard set by most other professional bodies in other spheres of employment and the police force is no exception to this rule. A further recommendation is for officers to be in possession of a degree. Facilities for

this are available at the University of Durban-Westville where students can present themselves for degrees in subjects relevant to policing such as Criminology, Public Administration and Sociology. The writer suggests that the police authorities consider the feasibility of these recommendations and to take the necessary steps when possible.

#### 10.2.6 Manner of Address

Although it is departmental policy for all policemen to address members of the public with courtesy and respect, in practice it might not be the case with all policemen. The majority of respondents (67,95 percent) in this research have stated that the manner in which policemen address the public could either encourage or discourage co-operation from them. It is recommended that policemen should be made aware that their (police) image could be tarnished by uncouth or impolite behaviour. To enhance the image of the police civility in dealing with the public is vital.

#### 10.3 Summary

The aim of this research was to place on record the contributions made to law enforcement by Indian members of the South African Police Force and to determine the attitudes of a sample of Indian respondents to the Indian policemen and police services.

In order to achieve his purpose the writer traced out the general development of the South African Police to show that Indian policemen developed on parallel lines with their White counterparts in the Force.

Basically, police services were established to maintain social control over members of society. Every civilised State, like South Africa, has a body of trained men to keep peace and order amongst its peoples. For this purpose there is a police organisation having three main characteristics namely: the provision of police services through patrol, investigation, vice control and other activities; the provision of operational services, supported by the provision of supplies, maintenance of equipment and other internal activities to sustain the field division; and planning, and organisation for the future.

In South Africa policing developed as early as 1652 when Jan van Riebeeck delegated soldiery powers to certain men to enforce his instructions strictly. In 1861 the first Indian constable was appointed in Durban by the local magistrate.

On the 1st April 1913 all the pre-Union police forces were consolidated into one national Police Force known as the South African Police Force. It is an independent government

department. The Police Act, Act No. 7 of 1958 clearly sets out the functions of the police. The main functions include *inter alia*, the preservation of the internal security of the Republic; the maintenance of law and order; and the investigation and prevention of crime.

The South African Police Force resembles a military organisation more closely than a business organisation. The symbols of the police namely, insignia, uniforms, arms, special equipment and vehicles are military in aspect. The Force is therefore highly disciplined with a high morale.

To be an effective law enforcement agency the Force is divided into various divisions for example, the Uniformed Branch performs the basic function of crime prevention and the Detective Branch investigates crime. Other specialised branches include, *inter alia*, the Security Branch, Gold Branch and Commercial Branch.

The South African Police does not have all the necessary facilities for the scientific examination of evidence, in which case it seeks the help of State and semi-State organisations in its work.

Indian recruits are trained at the South African Police Training College in Austerville, Durban. They receive

the same course of training as their White colleagues. In-service policemen have become fully aware of the importance of education - general and professional - and have been requested *inter alia*, to attend periodic refresher courses.

In expressing their views the majority of the respondents in the research group have indicated *inter alia*, that : the entrance qualification to the Force should be raised to matriculation standard, that more Indian policemen be stationed in densely populated areas to combat the crime menace, and that more police patrols be organised to operate in Indian areas in an attempt to reduce the crime rate.

BIBLIOGRAPHYA. BOOKS

- Adams, T.F. : *Law Enforcement : An Introduction to the Police Role in the Community*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., N.J. 1968.
- Adams, T.F. : *Police Patrol : Tactics and Techniques*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., N.J. 1971.
- Adams, T.F. : *Criminal Justice*, Goodyear Publishing Co., Inc., California, 1972.
- Akers, R.L. and Hawkins, R. : *Law and Control in Society*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., New Jersey, 1975.
- Allen, C.K. : *The Queen's Peace*, Stevens and Sons Ltd., London, 1953.
- Apsler, A. : *An Introduction to Social Science*, Random House, New York, 1971.
- Bittner, E. : *The Functions of the Police in Modern Society*, National Institute of Mental Health Centre for Studies of Crime and Delinquency, Maryland, 1970.
- Banton, M. : *The Policeman in the Community*, Tavistock Publications, Ltd., London, 1964.
- Bayley, D.H. : *The Police and Political Development in India*, Princeton University Press, N.J., 1969.
- Barnes, H.E. and Teeters, N.K. : *New Horizons in Criminology*, 3rd Ed., Prentice-Hall, Inc., N.J., 1963.
- Beach, D.S. : *Personnel : The Management of People at Work*, The MacMillan Co., New York, 1975.
- Bhambri, C.P. : *Public Administration*, The MacMillan Co., New York, 1957.
- Bodenheimer, E. : *Jurisprudence - The Philosophy and Method of Law*, Harvard University Press, Massachusetts, 1962.

- Bordua, D.J. : *The Police - Six Sociological Essays*, John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York, 1967.
- Broom, L. and Selznick, P. : *Principles of Sociology*, 4th Ed., Harper and Row Publishers, Inc., 1970.
- Branham, V.C. and Kutash, S.B. (eds.) : *Encyclopaedia of Criminology*, Philosophical Library, New York, 1949.
- Bulpin, T.V. : *To the Shores of Natal*, Howard B. Timmins, Cape Town, 1948.
- Caldwell, R. : *Criminology*, The Ronald Press Co., New York, 1956.
- Campbell, J.S., Sahid, J.R. and Stang, D.P. : *Law and Order Reconsidered*, Praeger Publishers, U.S.A., 1970.
- Cavan, R.S. : *Criminology*, 3rd Ed., Thomas, Y. Cromwell, Co., New York, 1962.
- Clift, R.E. : *A Guide to Modern Police Thinking*, Cincinnati, 1970.
- Colquhoun, P. : *A Treatise on the Police of the Metropolis*, Patterson Smith, N.J., 1969.
- Davis, M. : *Human Society*, The McMillan Co., New York, 1949.
- Dawson, W.H. : *South Africa : People, Places and Problems*, Longmans, Green and Co., London, 1925.
- Dressler, D. : *Probation and Parole*, Columbia University Press, New York, 1956.
- Eldefonso, E., Coffey, A. and Grace, R.C. : *Principles of Law Enforcement*, John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York, 1968.
- Eldefonso, E., Coffey, A. and Sullivan, J. : *Police and the Criminal Law*, Goodyear Publishing Co., Inc., California, 1972.
- Field, L.F. : *Police Administration : A Critical Study of Police Organisations in the United States and Abroad*, G.T. Putman Sons, New York, 1909.

- Gibson, J.T.R. : *Principles of South African Law*, 6th Ed., Juta and Co., Ltd., Cape Town, 1970.
- Gocke, B.W. and Payton, G.L. : *Police Sergeant's Manual*, 5th Ed., Legal Book Corporation, California, 1972.
- Green, L.P. : *History of Local Government in South Africa*, Juta and Co., Ltd., 1957.
- Halayya, M. : *Social Sciences*, Asia Publishing House, London, 1961.
- Harrison, R. : *The Story of the World's Police*, Phoenix House, Ltd., London, 1954.
- Heath, J. : *Eighteenth Century Penal Theory*, Oxford University Press, London, 1963.
- Holcomb, R.L. : *Selection of Police Officers*, Bureau of Police Affairs, State University of Iowa, 1946.
- Horgan, J.J. : *Criminal Investigation*, McGraw-Hill Inc., U.S.A., 1974.
- Horrel, M. : *South Africa : Basic Facts and Figures*, South African Institute of Race Relations, Johannesburg, 1973.
- Iannone, N.F. : *Supervision of Police Personnel*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., N.J., 1970.
- Jefferey, C.R. : *Crime Prevention through Environmental Design*, Sage Publications, Beverley Hills, London, 1971.
- Jones, H. : *Crime in a Changing Society*, Penguin Books Ltd., London, 1967.
- Kelsen, H. : *General Theory of Law and State*, Russell and Russell, New York, 1961.
- Keppel-Jones, A. : *South Africa*, 5th Ed., Hutchinson University Library, London, 1975.
- Knudten, R.D. : *Crime in a Complex Society*, The Dorsey Press, Illinois, 1970.

- Kuper, H. : *The Indian as a South African*, S.A. Institute of Race Relations, Johannesburg, 1956.
- Lambert, J.R. : *Crime, Police and Race Relations*, Oxford University Press, London, 1970.
- Leonard, A. : *Police Administration and Management*, The Foundation Press, New York, 1951.
- Leonard, V.A. : *The Police of the 20th Century*, The Foundation Press, New York, 1964.
- Leonard, V.A. : *The Police Records System*, Charles C. Thomas, Illinois, 1970.
- Leonard, V.A. : *Police Crime Prevention*, Charles C. Thomas, U.S.A., 1972.
- Leslie, G.R.,  
Larson, R.F. and  
Gorman, B.L. : *Order and Change*, Oxford University Press, London, 1973.
- Lloyd, D. : *The Idea of Law*, Cox and Wyman, Ltd., London, 1972.
- Mannheim, H. : *Comparative Criminology*, Vol. 1 and 2, Routledge and Kegan Paul, London, 1965.
- Martin, J.H. : *Juvenile Vandalism*, Charles C. Thomas, U.S.A., 1961.
- Millet, J.D. : *Management in the Public Service*, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York, 1954.
- Midgley, J.,  
Steyn, J.H. and  
Graser, R. : *Crime and Punishment in South Africa*, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Johannesburg, 1975.
- Packer, H.L. : *The Limits of the Criminal Sanction*, Stanford University Press, California, 1968.
- Quinney, R. : *The Social Reality of Crime*, Little, Brown and Co., Boston, 1970.
- Quinney, R. : *Crime and Justice in Society*, Little, Brown and Co., Boston, 1969.

- Radzinowicz, L. and Wolfgang, M.E. (ed.) : *Crime and Justice*, Vol. II, Basic Books, Inc., New York.
- Rosenthal, E. : *Encyclopaedia of Southern Africa*, Frederick Warne and Co., Ltd., London, 1965.
- Sandström, C.L. : *The Psychology of Childhood and Adolescence*, Penguin Books Ltd., England, 1974.
- Schur, E.M. : *Our Criminal Society*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., N.J., 1969.
- Sethna, M.J. : *Society and the Criminal*, 3rd Ed., N.M. Tripathi Private Ltd., Bombay, 1971.
- Seagle, A. : *The History of Law*, Tudor Publishing Co., London, 1941.
- Smith, B. : *Police Systems in the United States*, 2nd Revised Edition, Harper and Brothers, New York, 1960.
- Sullivan, J.L. : *Introduction to Police Science*, 2nd Ed., McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York, 1966.
- Sutherland, E.H. and Cressey, D.R. : *Principles of Criminology*, 6th Ed., J.B. Lippincott Co., Chicago, 1960.
- Taft, D.R. and England, R.W. : *Criminology*, 4th Ed., MacMillan Co., New York, 1964.
- Tappan, P.W. : *Crime, Justice and Correction*, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York, 1960.
- Tobias, J.J. : *Nineteenth Century Crime : Prevention and Punishment*, David and Charles Ltd., Newton Abbot, 1972.
- Toch, H. : *Legal and Criminal Psychology*, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Inc., New York, 1961.
- Treger, H. : *The Police-Social Work Team*, Charles C. Thomas, Illinois, 1975.
- Van der Walt, P.J. : *'n Sociologiese Klassifikasie van Misdade*, Nasionale Handelsdrukkery Bpk., Elsie'srivier, 1964.

- Van Onselen, L. : *A Rhapsody in Blue*, Howard Timmins, Cape Town, 1960.
- Weston, P.B. and Wells, K.M. : *Law Enforcement and Criminal Justice*, Goodyear Publishing Co., California, 1972.
- Whisenand, P.M. : *Police Supervision : Theory and Practice*, Prentice-Hall, Inc., New Jersey, 1971.
- Wilson, O.W. : *Police Records*, Public Administration Service, Chicago, 1942.
- Wilson, O.W. and McLaren, R.C. : *Police Administration*, 3rd Ed., McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York, 1972.

#### B. JOURNALS/PERIODICALS

- Ahrens, J.F. : "Lets recognize that the Patrolman is the Department", *Abstracts on Police Science*, Vol. 1, 1973.
- Baddeley, F. : "The National Police College of England and Wales", *Journal of Criminal Law, Criminology and Police Science*, Vol. 63, No. 3, 1972.
- Brown, L.P. : "The Police and Higher Education: The Challenge of the Times", *Abstracts on Police Science*, Vol. 2, No. 6, 1974.
- Clarke, W.J. : "A History of the Natal Police", *Nongqai*, 1947.
- Cook, R.A. : "British Law Enforcement perceived through the eyes of an American Policeman", *F.B.I. Bulletin*, Vol. 44, No. 9, September, 1975.
- Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police XII", *Nongqai*, November, 1947.
- Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police XIII", *Nongqai*, November, 1947.
- Cooper, F.W. : "The Golden Jubilee of the South African Police", *Justitia*, April, 1963.

- Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police XI", *Nongqai*, October, 1947.
- Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police II", *Nongqai*, January, 1947.
- Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police III", *Nongqai*, February, 1947.
- Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police IV", *Nongqai*, March, 1947.
- Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police V", *Nongqai*, April, 1947.
- Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police VI", *Nongqai*, May, 1947.
- Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police VII", *Nongqai*, June, 1947.
- Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police VIII", *Nongqai*, July, 1947.
- Cooper, F.W. : "A Short History of the S.A. Police IX", *Nongqai*, August, 1947.
- Cowger, C.D. and Atherton, C.R. : "Social Control : A Rationale for Social Welfare", *Abstracts on Police Science*, Vol. 2, No. 6, Nov.-Dec., 1974.
- Davis, E.M. : "Professional Police Principles", *Federal Probation*, March, 1971.
- Day, F.D. : "Criminal Law Enforcement and a Free Society", *Journal of Criminal Law, Criminology and Police Science*, Vol. 54, No. 3, September, 1963.
- Derbyshire, R.L. : "The Social Control of the Police in the Changing Urban Communities", *Excerpta Criminologica*, Vol. 6, No. 3, May-June, 1966.
- Gabor, I.R. and Low, C. : "The Police Role in the Community", *Criminology : An Interdisciplinary Journal*, Vol. 10, No. 4, February, 1973.

- Greenberg, R.M. : "Police Discretion vs. Discriminatory Law Enforcement", *Abstracts on Police Science*, Vol. 2, No. 6, Nov.-Dec., 1974.
- Van Heerden, T.J. : "Formal Structure of Police Organisation", *Abstracts on Police Science*, Vol. 9, No. 9.
- Herold, H. : "From Cybernetics to the Organisation of the Police Force", *Abstracts on Police Science*, Vol. 2, No. 2, 1974.
- James, I.T. : "The Computer and the Police", *Abstracts on Police Science*, Vol. 1, 1973.
- Jenkins, O. : "From Rattle Watch to Batons", *Nongqai*, August, 1938.
- Johnson, E.H. : "Inter-relatedness of Law Enforcement Programs : A Fundamental Dimension", *Journal of Criminal Law, Criminology and Police Science*, Vol. 60, No. 4, 1969.
- Kiesl, E. : "Police are increasingly confronted....", *Abstracts on Police Science*, Vol. 2, No. 3, May-June, 1974.
- Knight, R. : "The Police Role in our Permissive Society", *Abstracts on Police Science*, Vol. 27, No. 3, 1973.
- Lankes, G.A. : "How should we educate the Police?", *Journal of Criminal Law, Criminology and Police Science*, Vol. 61, No. 4, 1971.
- Lyman, J.L. : "The Metropolitan Act of 1892", *Journal of Criminal Law, Criminology and Police Science*, Vol. 55, 1964.
- Manella, F.L. : "Group differences as they affect the Police", *Abstracts on Police Science*, Vol. 2, No. 6, Nov.-Dec., 1974.
- Muir, A.A. : "A Profession?", *Criminologist*, Vol. 8, No. 27, 1973.

- O'Connor, D. : "The Modern Approach to the Police Function", *The Australian and New Zealand Journal of Criminology*, Vol. 7, No. 2, June, 1974.
- Parker, W.H. : "The Police Science - Key to Community Quality", *Journal of Criminal Law, Criminology and Police Science*, Vol. 55, 1964.
- Pillay, P.N. : "Social Implications of Resettlement", *The Teachers' Journal*, Vol. XX, No. 2, September, 1971.
- Siemon, J.M. and Black, C.C. : "A new approach to in-service Training", *F.B.I. Bulletin*, Vol. 43, No. 11, 1973.
- Stelter, B. : "Explosive Mood in the Police Force?", *Abstracts on Police Science*, Vol. 2, No. 3, 1974.
- Stinchcombe, A.L. : "Institutions of Privacy in the determination of Police Administration Practice", *The American Journal of Sociology*, Vol. 69, No. 2, September, 1963.
- Du Toit, P.J. : "The Role of the Police as a Crime Preventive Force" *Micro Crim. Journal*, Vol. 3, No. 2, June, 1974.
- Wegg-Prosser, C. : "The Problems of those 'helping the Police'", *Abstracts on Police Science*, Vol. 2, No. 6, Nov.-Dec., 1974.
- Wasby, S.L. : "Police Training and the Criminal", *Abstracts on Police Science*, Vol. 1, 1973.

C. GOVERNMENT PUBLICATIONS

1. Department of Information: "Police Promotion", *Fiat Lux*, No. 8, October, 1974.
2. Department of Information: "Photo Flashes", *Fiat Lux*, No. 8, October, 1972.

3. Department of Information: "Efficient Commander's Course for Indian Police Sergeants", *Fiat Lux*, No. 8, October, 1971.
4. Department of Information: "S.A. Police get 2 new Officers", *Fiat Lux*, No. 7, September, 1970.
5. Department of Information: "They guard our Borders", *Fiat Lux*, No. 7, September, 1973.
6. Department of Information: "Police Career", *Fiat Lux*, March-April, 1976.
7. Department of Information: "Police Science Degree", *South African Digest*, 17th October, 1975.

#### D. REPORTS

1. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of Police for the Year ending June 30th, 1895.*
2. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of Police for the Year ended 1916.*
3. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of Police for the Year ended 1917.*
4. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the Year ended 1921-1922.*
5. *Annual Departmental Reports No. 3, for the period 1922-1923.*
6. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the Year 1951, The Government Printer, Pretoria.*
7. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the Year 1952, The Government Printer, Pretoria.*
8. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the Year 1953, The Government Printer, Pretoria.*
9. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the Year 1954. The Government Printer, Pretoria.*
10. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the Year 1957. The Government Printer, Pretoria.*
11. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the Year 1960. The Government Printer, Pretoria.*
12. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the Year ended 1963, The Government Printer, Pretoria.*

13. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the Year ended 30th June, 1964*, The Government Printer, Pretoria.
14. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the period 1964-1965*, The Government Printer, Pretoria.
15. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the period 1966-1967*, The Government Printer, Pretoria.
16. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the period 1st July, 1967 to 30th June, 1968*, The Government Printer, Pretoria.
17. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the period 1st July, 1969 to 30th June, 1970*, The Government Printer, Pretoria.
18. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the Year ended 30th June, 1972*, The Government Printer, Pretoria.
19. *Annual Report of the Commissioner of the South African Police for the Year ended 30th June, 1974*, The Government Printer, Pretoria.

#### E. DOCUMENTS

1. Police Regulations of 1894.
2. *Regulations for the South African Police* published under Government Notice R203 of 14 February, 1964.
3. *The Government Gazette Extraordinary No. 547* dated July, 1963 and relevant Regulations published in Government Notice No. R990, Government Gazette, No. 547 (Regulation Gazette No. 209).
4. *South African Police Standing Order*.
5. *Police Reservists Guide*, The Government Printer, Pretoria.
6. *Official Year Book of the Union, No. 4 of 1921*, The Government Printer, Pretoria.
7. *The Natal Blue Book, 1876*.
8. *The Natal Blue Book, 1882*.
9. *The Natal Blue Book, 1890-1891*.
10. *The Natal Blue Book, 1892-1893*.

11. *The Natal Almanac and Yearly Register for AD 1863*, P Davis and Sons, "Government Gazette" and "Natal Witness Office", Pietermaritzburg, Natal.
12. *Hansard, House of Assembly Debates*, The Government Printer, Pretoria, 18th April, 1975.

F. ORDINANCES

1. Ordinance No. 5 of 1846.
2. Natal Ordinance No. 5 of 1928.

G. UNPUBLISHED DISSERTATIONS

1. Ndabandaba, G.L. : *Crime in Mtunzini*, Unpublished M.A. dissertation, University of Zululand, 1974.
2. Mayat, H.R. : *The Role and Image of the South African Police in Society from the Point of the Coloured People in Johannesburg*, Unpublished M.A. dissertation, University of South Africa, 1976.
3. Poodhun, E.E. : *Parole Services for Indian Offenders*, Unpublished M.A. dissertation, University of Durban-Westville, 1972.

A P P E N D I X      1

QUESTIONNAIRE

The role of Indian Policemen in the South African Police Force

Questionnaire Number

	1.3
--	-----

Area

	1.5
--	-----

Please answer the following questions by making a cross in the spaces provided.

Your name is not required.

All information will be treated as being strictly confidential.

Please note: All questions relate to Indian policemen.

SECTION A

1. Please indicate your sex.

Male	Female	1.6
1	2	

2. What is your home language?

Hindi	Tamil	Telegu	Urdu	Gujurati	English	Afrikaans	Other	1.7
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	

3. Indicate your age group.

18-24	25-29	30-34	35-39	40-44	45-49	50-54	55-59	60+	1.8
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	

4. What is your educational qualification. Mark the highest only.

Up to Std. 6	Std. 7 and 8	Std. 9 and 10	Diploma	Degree	1.9
1	2	3	4	5	

Make a Cross Here Please

5. Which of the following categories best describes your occupation?

- Professional and technical
- Manager, official, proprietor, retail trader
- Clerical, secretarial, salesworker
- Craftsman, foreman, mechanic
- Machine operator, driver
- Domestic worker, service worker, police, navy
- Farmer, warehouseman, labourer
- Other (specify) \_\_\_\_\_

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8

1.0

Make a  
Cross Here Please



6. Which of the following terms best describes your present work status?

- Employed
- Unemployed, laid off, sick
- Retired
- Permanently disabled
- Housewife
- Student
- Other (specify) \_\_\_\_\_

1
2
3
4
5
6
7

1.11

7. State your marital status:

- Married
- Widowed
- Divorced
- Separated
- Single

1
2
3
4
5

1.12

8. Have you ever been in contact with the S.A. Police as:

- Accused and found guilty
- Accused but not found guilty
- Arrested and questioned
- Complainant
- Informer
- For other reasons (specify) \_\_\_\_\_
- No contact

1
2
3
4
5
6
7

1.13

SECTION B

9. What do you think is the most important reason for having a police force?

- Judicial (Law enforcement)
- Political (relating to the State)
- Religious
- Service to society
- Undecided
- Other (specify) \_\_\_\_\_

1
2
3
4
5
6

1.14

Make a  
Cross Here Please

10. Do you think the police service as it exists today is:

Absolutely necessary

Necessary

Unnecessary

Absolutely unnecessary

Uncertain



1
2
3
4
5

1.15

11. How would you rate the work of a policeman in comparison with other kinds of jobs in terms of its importance to society.

Much more important

More important

About as important

Less important

Important

Much less important

Uncertain

1
2
3
4
5
6
7

1.16

12. Do you think your personal liberty and privacy are threatened by the methods and techniques of the S.A. Police Force?

Definitely

To a large extent

To a lesser extent

Not at all

Uncertain

1
2
3
4
5

1.17

13. Is your answer to the above question based on:  
(Mark only those that apply to you);

Newspaper, radio and T.V. reports

What other people say

What you have observed

Personal experience

Undecided

1	
2	
3	
4	
5	

1.18-1.1

1.20-1.2

1.22-1.2

1.24-1.2

1.26-1.2

NOTE: If you have marked more than one item above, indicate with a 1 the most important reason; Use a 2 for the next most important, and so on.

Make a Cross Here Please

14. Rate the following police principles in order of importance:

	Most Impt.	Very Impt.	Impt.	Less Impt.	Not Impt.	
	1	2	3	4	5	
The police force must be stable, efficient and organised along military lines.						1.28
The absence of crime and disorder will best prove the efficiency of the police.						1.29
Policemen must have a perfect command of their temper.						1.30
The selection and training of suitable people are prerequisites for an effective police force.						1.31
Police stations should be accessible to all people.						1.32
To be effective in the control and prevention of crime the police must be able to secure the willing co-operation of the public.						1.33
The use of compulsion and physical force in achieving police objectives should be avoided as far as possible.						1.34

### SECTION C

15. In your opinion, which are the most important police functions (rate in order of importance).

	Most Impt.	Very Impt.	Impt.	Less Impt.	Not Impt.	
	1	2	3	4	5	
Crime prevention						1.35
Law enforcement						1.36
Maintenance of order						1.37
Protection of life and property						1.38
Settlement of domestic quarrels						1.39

Make a  
Cross Here Please

16. How would you describe the efforts of policemen in preventing crime?

Excellent

Good

Satisfactory

Poor

Undecided

1
2
3
4
5

1.40

17. Rate the following police methods according to the effect you think they will have in reducing the crime rate:

	Very Ef= fective	Ef= fective	Inef= fective	Very Inef= fective	Un= certain	
More police patrols	1	2	3	4	5	1.4
Increase in the number of Indian Policemen	1	2	3	4	5	1.4
Immediate attention to complaints	1	2	3	4	5	1.4
Establishment of more police stations	1	2	3	4	5	1.4
Re-introducing large scale foot patrols	1	2	3	4	5	1.4

18. Are you receiving adequate police protection against criminals in your area?

Definitely

To a large extent

To a lesser extent

Not at all

Undecided

1
2
3
4
5

1.4

19. What educational qualifications would you consider most suitable for policemen in the following ranks:

	Standards					Higher Education		
	6	7	8	9	10	Diploma	Degree	
Officers	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	1.47
Non-officers	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	1.48

SECTION D

Make a  
Cross Here Please

20. Do you receive fair and just treatment from policemen?

- Always
- Often
- Sometimes
- Never
- Undecided

1

2

3

4

5

1.49

21. Do you as a member of society feel you have a duty to help the police in combatting crime?

- Definitely
- To a large extent
- To a lesser extent
- Not at all
- Undecided

1

2

3

4

5

1.50

22. How would you rate the usual actions of policemen towards you in the following situations?

	Very Good	Good	Undecided	Bad	Very Bad	
The way they talk to you	1	2	3	4	5	1.51
The way they treat you	1	2	3	4	5	1.52
The way they handle your complaints	1	2	3	4	5	1.53
The way they make arrests (Not necessarily of you!)	1	2	3	4	5	1.54

23. To what extent does the attitude created by the above factors encourage or discourage you in helping the police?

- Definitely stimulates assistance
- Definitely discourages assistance
- Undecided

1

2

3

1.55

- 7 -

Make a Cross Here Please
-----------------------------

24. Do you think that in performing their duties policemen are:

Unquestionably honest

Usually honest

Usually dishonest

Unquestionably dishonest

Undecided

1
2
3
4
5

1.56

25. Is your answer to the above question based on-

Personal experience

Personal observation

Reports in the press. radio and T.V.

What people say

Other reason (specify) \_\_\_\_\_

1
2
3
4
5

1.57

26. In performing their duties would you say that policemen are:

Highly efficient

Efficient

Inefficient

Highly inefficient

Undecided

1
2
3
4
5

1.58

-----



T83/54